

# LEARN KHMER

## Part 1

# WRITING SYSTEM

## I. Introduction

Cambodian, also known as Khmer, is the official language of the Kingdom of Cambodia and it is spoken by almost all Cambodians. Khmer is also understood by people in many bordering countries such as Thailand (in the eastern provinces of Buriram, Surin, and Srisket in the northern Thailand), in the Mekong Delta region of South Vietnam, and in southern Laos (Huffman, 1970).

Cambodian is the major modern representative of the Mon-Khmer language family which includes hundreds of related dialects scattered over most of mainland Southeast Asia. As for foreign influences on the language, the Khmer language has borrowed many words from Sankrit.

With the advent of Theravada Buddhism at the beginning of the fifteenth century, Khmer began to borrow Pali words, and continues to use Pali as a major source of neologisms today (Huffman 1970). During the period of French domination, many French words were borrowed into the language and have become a part of the colloquial language, as well as medical and technical terms. There is also a smattering of Chinese and Vietnamese loanwords in colloquial speech.

Unlike Thai, Vietnamese, and Lao, Khmer is non-tonal and has a high percentage of disyllabic words which are derived from monosyllabic bases by prefixation, and infixation. (Huffman, 1970)



## II. Writing System

The Cambodian script (called *Khmer* letters) are all probably derived from various forms of the ancient Brahmi script of South India. The Cambodian script has symbols for thirty-three consonants, twenty-four dependent vowels, twelve independent vowels, and several diacritic symbols. Most consonants have reduced or modified forms, called sub-consonants, when they occur as the second member of a consonant cluster. Vowels may be written before, after, over, or under a consonant symbol.

Some efforts to standardize Khmer spelling have been attempted, but inconsistencies persist, and many words have more than one accepted spelling. A two-volume dictionary prepared under the direction of the Venerable Chuon Nath of the Buddhist Institute in Phnom Penh is the standard work on Khmer lexicography.

Khmer is divided into three historical stages: Old Khmer (seventh to twelfth century A.D.), Middle Khmer (twelfth to seventeenth century A.D.), and Modern Khmer (seventeenth century to the present). It is likely that Old Khmer was the language of Chenla. The language of Funan was most probably a Mon-Khmer language. The earliest inscription in Khmer, found at Angkor Borei in Takev Province south of Phnom Penh, dates from A.D. 611. (Huffman, 1970)



### III. Consonant

There are thirty-three letters in the Cambodian writing system. They are arranged in five groups according to the position of the articulation, proceeding from the back to the front of the mouth, and a sixth group labeled as *miscellaneous*. The consonants in modern Cambodian are also divided into two categories or *series*. The first series is voiceless and the second series is voiced (sometimes are called light voiced and heavy voiced). The table below provides the symbol of all consonants sounds in IPA symbol with the first and second series sound. (Huffman, 1970)

Num	Consonants	IPA	Pronunciation 1st Series	Pronunciation 2nd Series
1	ក	k	kaa	
2	ខ	kh	khaa	
3	គ	k		kaa
4	ឃ	kh		khaa
5	ង	ŋ		ŋaa

6	ថ	c	caa	
7	ធ	ch	chaa	
8	ជ	c		ច
9	ឈ	ch		ច
10	ញ	ñ		ច

11	ដ	d	daa	
12	ថ	th	thaa	
13	ឌ	d		ច
14	ធរ	th		ច
15	ណ	n	naa	

16	ត	t	taa	
17	ធ	th	thaa	

18	ត	t		តោ
19	ថ	th		ថោ
20	ន	n		នោ

21	ប	b	បា	
22	ផ	ph	ផា	
23	ព	p		ពោ
24	ភ	ph		ភោ
25	ម	m		មោ

26	យ	y		យោ
27	រ	r		រោ
28	ល	l		លោ
29	វ	w		វោ

30	ស	s	saa
31	ហ	h	haa
32	ឡ	l	laa
33	អ	q	qaa

As mentioned above, the consonants in modern Cambodian have two series. The first series is voiceless and the second series is voiced (sometimes are called light voiced and heavy voiced). Here is a table to compare the two different sounds in the first and second series.

First Series	Pronunciation 1st Series	Second Series	Pronunciation 2nd Series
ក	kaa	ក	kaa
ខ	khaa	ខ	khaa
ច	caa	ជ	caa
ឆ	chaa	ឈ	chaa
ណ	naa	ន	naa

ដ	daa	ឌ	doo
ថ	thaa	ល	thoo
ត	taa	ទ	too
ថ	thaa	ឆ	thoo
ផ	phaa	ភ	phoo
ឡ	laa	ល	loo
ង	ngaa	ង	ngoo
ញ	ñaa	ញ	ñoo
ប	pa	ព	peo
ម	maa	ម	meo
យ	yaa	យ	yeo
រ	raa	រ	reo

វ	waa	វ	waa
ស	saa	ស	saa
ហ	haa	ហ	haa
ប	baa	ប	baa
អ	qaa	អ	qaa

#### IV. Sub-consonant

When two consonants are pronounced consecutively within a word, the second consonant's symbol is written in a special sub-consonant form which is placed below the first consonant. The sub-consonant always follows the consonant in the pronunciation. The form of the sub-consonant is in most cases a smaller version of its consonant version but some look completely different from the superscript. The tables provided here are the lists of the sub-consonant and the consonant. (Huffman, 1970)

ក	ខ	គ	ឃ	ង
ច	ដ	ណ	ប្រ	ត
ដ	ឆ	ត	ប្រ	ត
ក	ខ	គ	ឃ	ង

ប្ប	ផ្ទ	ព	ភ	ម
យ្យ	រ	ល	វ	
ស្យ	ហ	ឡ	អ	












## V. Vowels

The Cambodian vowel may consist of one or a combination of elements written before, above, below, or after the initial consonant. There are 24 vowels in Khmer. Since the abstract vowel (aa) is embedded in a consonant, there are only 23 vowels shown in the table below. The pronunciation of a vowel in Khmer is determined by the series of the initial consonant that it accompanies. Click on the vowels to listen to their pronunciation and practice with the consonants.





The pronunciation of a vowel in Cambodian is determined by the two series of consonants (first and second series). Examples of how to pronounce a vowel with the first and second series consonant are found in the [Vowels](#) page. The table below provides the symbol of all vowel sounds in IPA symbol with the first and second series sound. (Huffman, 1970)

Vowel Symbol	Name of Vowel in IPA	Vowel	
		First Series	Second Series
X	Sraq aa	aa	oo
X <sub>1</sub>	Sraq aa	aa	ie



	Sraq e	e	i
	Sraq ey	ey	ii
	Sraq ə	ə	ɪ
	Sraq ət	ət	ɪɪ
	Sraq o	o	u
	Sraq ou	ou	uu
	Sraq ən	ən	en
 	Sraq aə	aə	ee

	Sraq æ	æ	æ
	Sraq iæ	iæ	iæ
	Sraq ei	ei	ee
	Sraq æe	æe	æe
	Sraq ay	ay	ay
	Sraq ao	ao	oo
	Sraq aw	aw	aw
	Sraq om	om	um

	Sraq am	am	um
	Sraq am	am	oəm
	Sraq ah	ah	eəh
	Sraq oh	oh	uh
	Sraq eh	eh	ih
	Sraq ah	ah	uh



## VI. Independent Vowel

Independent vowels are known as /sraq pəñ tuə/ (complete vowel) because they incorporate both an initial consonant and a vowel. In the table below, independent vowel from 1 to 5 and 10 to 11 include an initial /q-/ and are listed in the official dictionary along with other words that are spelled with an initial **Ḥ** and the equivalent vowel. Independent vowel 6 and 7 include an

initial /r/ and are listed in the official dictionary along with an initial ၵ and the equivalent vowel. Independent vowel 8 and 9 includes an initial /l/ and are listed in the official dictionary along with an initial consonant လူ. (Huffman, 1970)

Independent Vowels	Name of Independent Vowels	Value of Independent Vowels
ၵ	sraq ə	qə
ၵျ	sraq əy	qəy
ၵဝ	sraq o	qo
ၵဝ	sraq ao	qao
ၵဝ	sraq əw	qəw
လူ	sraq rɪk	rɪk
လူ	sraq rɪɪ	rɪɪ
လူ	sraq lɪk	lɪk
လူ	sraq lɪɪ	lɪɪ

ឆ	sraq ae	qae
ច	sraq ay	qay



## VII. Diacritic (Huffman, 1970)

### 1. The Bantaq ប័ន្តក៏ ( ' )

Diacritic Bantaq occurs on the top of the final consonant of a syllable and it is used to shorten the vowel of that syllable. All Khmer consonant there is an inherent vowel. The inherent vowel for first series consonant is /aa/ and second consonant is /ɔɔ/.

- In a syllable with invisible vowel, bantaq signals the short inherent vowel. For example, vowel /aa/ change to /a/ after a first series consonant, and /ɔɔ/ change to /u/ or /ʉə/ after the second series consonant.
- The vowel ( - 1 ) /aa/ followed by the Bantaq ( ' ) will pronounced shorter /a/ after the first series consonant and after the second series consonant, vowel ( - 1 ) /aa/ is pronounced /ɔə/ or /ɛə/.



### 2. Trəysap ត្រីស័ព្ទ ( ̂ )

Trəysap is used to convert four of the first series consonants ស ហ ប and អ which have no second series counterpart to the second series consonant ស័ ហ័ ប័ and អ័.



### 3. Mousekatoan ម្លូសិក៏ទន្ល ( " )

- Mousekatoan is used to convert six of the second series consonants ង ញ ម យ រ and វ which has no second series counterparts to first series consonants ង័ ញ័ ម័ យ័ រ័ and វ័.
- Mousekatoan is used to convert a first series consonant ប to ប័ and from which ប័ has the counterpart in the second series ព.

#### 4. Sanyok-sanha សំយោគសញ្ញា ( ៧ )

- Sanyok-sanha has the same value as the (- 1 ). It is used in a certain words which borrowed from Pali or Sakrit. Usually, if the final consonant is silent, the words can be spelled with different way.
- If the sanyok-sanha plus a final ឃ, it is pronounced (ai) in the first series and (ei) in the second series.
- If the s sanyok-sanha plus a final ( រ ) /r/, it is pronounced ( oa).

#### 5. Robaat រ៉ាបាត ( ៨ )

Robaat is the reflex of an original /r/ in Sanskrit words.

- In most words, when the (robaat) occurs over a final cononant, both the consonant and the robaat are not pronounced.
- In some cases, the effect of the robaat is to change the vowel /វ័/ to /វេ/.
- When the robaat appears over a medial consoant, the robaat is pronounced.

### VIII. Punctuation (Huffman, 1970)

#### 1. Khan ( ៩ )

This is Cambodian full stop. It occurs less frequently than the full stop in English. It can be at the end of a single sentence or several sentences dealing with a single topic.

#### 2. baariyaosaan ( ១០ )

baariyaosaan is a full stop that marks the the entire end of a chapter or an entire text.

#### 3. Laq ( ១១ )

Laq is used to indicate et cetera.

#### 4. Leiktoo ( ១២ )

Leiktoo is used to indicate that the word or phrase after which it occurs is to be repeated.

# ព្យញ្ជនៈ

## CONSONANTS

The 33 consonants are divided into two series: **First series** and **Second series**

ក	ខ	គ	ឃ	ង
ច	ឆ	ជ	ឈ	ញ
ដ	ប័	ឌ	ឍ	ណ
ត	ថ	ទ	ធ	ន
ប	ផ	ព	ភ	ម
យ	រ	ល	វ	
ស	ហ	ឡ	អ	

### Note:

- The **green consonants** are the first series consonants and the **blue consonants** are the second series consonants.
- All Khmer consonant, there is an inherent vowel. The inherent vowel for the first series consonant is ( អ៊ ) /aa/ and the second series consonant is ( អ៊ ) /ɔɔ/.
- Each Cambodian consonants has a sub-consonant version, except the consonant " ឡ " which has no sub-consonant.
- Consonant " ញ " has two sub-consonants. You will find the uses of each sub-consonant in the **sub-consonant**.
- When two consonants are pronounced consecutively within a word, the second consonant is written in a special **sub-consonant** form below the first consonant. There is a link to Cambodian sub-consonants below.

•• The first series consonants " ប " and " ផ " have the same pronunciation. The words that are borrowed from Sanskrit are more often used with consonant ប . You can look at the example of this word by clicking on the consonant in the chart above.

•• The second series consonants " វ " and " ល " have the same pronunciation.

The consonant " ល " is rarely used. You can look at the example of this word by clicking on the consonant in the consonant chart above.

•• There are some [diacritics](#) that are used to change the first series consonant to the second series and vice versa.

•• Cambodian has a great variety of attractive and artistic styles. The Cambodian [round style letters](#) are generally used for titles, proper names and inscriptions on signs and public buildings.

## Sub-consonants

The 33 sub-consonants are divided into two series: **First series** and **Second series**.

ក	ខ	ក	ឃ	ច
ឃ	ង	ង	ឃ	ច
ក	ឃ	ង	ឃ	ង
ក	ង	ង	ង	ង
ឃ	ង	ង	ក	ង
ង	ង	ង	ង	





Note:

- When two consonants are pronounced consecutively within a word, the second consonant is written in a special sub-consonant from below the first consonant.
- The sub-consonants are called (ច្រើន) of consonant "consonant feet".
- The form of sub-consonant in most cases a smaller version of consonant, but without the top part of consonant which is called (ស្រី) (hair) of consonant.
- The combination of consonant and the sub-consonant is called (ឃ្លាត ឃ្លាត).
- Initial clusters are called ( ឃ្លាត ឃ្លាត ឃ្លាត )
- Medial clusters are called (ឃ្លាត ឃ្លាត ឃ្លាត ឃ្លាត )
- The sub-consonants are used as initial clusters and medial clusters.
- When there is a consonant cluster, (including both an initial consonant and its sub-consonant), the vowel symbols are written around the consonant cluster (either before, above, or after the consonant cluster, and in some cases a combination of these). In all cases, however, the vowel is pronounced *after* the consonant cluster.

## CAMBODIAN ROUND STYLE LETTERS



The Cambodian alphabet has a great variety of attractive and artistic styles. Shown above are the Cambodian letters in "round style" which are generally used for titles, proper names and inscriptions on signs and public buildings. The term used by the general public for this style of script is "qagsaa chlaq".

# DIACRITICS

## The Bantaq

Diacritic Bantaq បន្តាត ( ' )

Diacritic Bantaq occurs on the top of the final consonant of a syllable and it is used to shorten the vowel of that syllable. All Khmer consonant there is an inherent vowel. The inherent vowel for first series consonant is /aa/ and the second series consonant is /oo/.

- a. In a syllable with invisible vowel, bantaq is used to shorten the inherent vowel. For example, the inherent vowel /aa/ changes to /a/ after the first series consonant, and the inherent vowel /oo/ changes to /u/ or /ü/ after the second series consonant.

Example

Word No Bantaq			Word With Bantaq		
សាក់	saak	to shed the skin	សាក់	sak	hair
ចាប់	caap	hoe	ចាប់	cap	to finish
កាក់	kaak	to freeze	កាក់	kak	to deposit
កង់	kaaŋ	circle	កង់	kaŋ	bicycle

ບັກ	baak	to peel	ບັກ'	bak	to blow
ລຸບ	loop	fish trap	ລຸບ'	lup	bird trap
ລຸກ	look	to channel	ລຸກ'	lŭək	to sell

b. The vowel (- 1) /aa/ followed by the Bantaq ( ' ) will pronounced shorter /a/ after the first series consoant and after the second series consonant, vowel (-1) /aa/ is pronounced /ŏə/ or /ěə/

Example

Wod No Bantaq			Word With Bantaq		
ກາບ	laap	cable	ກາບ'	lap	to chop
ຫາບ	caap	bird	ຫາບ'	cap	to grab or to arrest
ຂາດ	khaat	to lose (something)	ຂາດ'	khat	to polish
ມາສ	miən	to be rich	ມາສ'	mŏən	chicken
ຕາກຸ່ງ	piəq	word	ຕາກ'	pěəq	to wear
ກົາດ	kiət	to wrap around	ກົາດ'	kŏət	he

# Treysap

Diacritic Trəysap (ត្រីស័ប) ( ̂ ) and Kbiəs Kroam ( ̣ )

Trəysap and Kbiəs Kroam are used to convert four of the first series consonants ស ហ ប and អ which have no second series counterpart to the second series consonant សី ហី បី and អី , so that the vowel used with this consonant are pronounced with the second series value.

Example:

Words Without Trəysap			Word With Trəysap or Kbiəs Kroam		
សប	sap	to pump air	សីប	sop	deeply
សី	səy		សី ប្តូរ សី	sii	
ហោរ	hao	fortune teller	ហើរ	hoo	shout
បុត្រ	bot	children	ប៊ុត	but	name of yellow gem
អ្នក អ្នក or អ្នក	qəy or qwəy	what	អី	qii	exclamatory

Note:

"Trəysap" and "kbiəs kraom" are used to transform first series consonants into second series consonants when these consonants are used with the following vowels រ ័ ័័ ័័័ ័័័័ ័័័័័ ័័័័័័ ័័័័័័័ ័័័័័័័័ ័័័័័័័័័ .

kbiəs kraom " ័ " is used in lieu of Trəysap when consonants are used with the following vowels: " ័័័័័័ " , while "Trəysap" is used consonants are used with the following vowels: " ័ ័័ ័័័ ័័័័ " .

# Mousekatoan

Diacritic Mousekatoan មូសិកាតូណូ ( " )

- a. Mousekatoan is used to convert six of the second series consonants ង ញ ម យ រ and វ which has no second series counterparts to first series consonants ង ញ ម យ រ and វ .
- b. Mousekatoan is used to convert a first series consonant ប to ប័ and from which ប័ has the conterpart in the second series ព .
- c. Kbiəs kraom " ័ " is used in lieu of mousekatoan when consonants are used with the following vowels: " ័័ ័័័ " .

Example:

Words Without Mousekatoan			Word With Mousekatoan		
ងា	ŋə	title	ង៉ា	ŋaa	sound of baby cry
ញ៉ាំ	ɲəəm	hammer	ញ៉ាំ	ɲam	eat

បុណ្យ	bon	festival	ប៉ុន្មាន	ponmaan	how (much) or (many)
មមៃ	momεε	the year of horse	ម៉ែ	mae	mother
យាង	yaŋ	go (royal vocabulary)	យ៉ាង	yaan	kind
រៃ	rεε	(no meaning)	រ៉ៃ	rae	mineral
វ៉ា	wia	to fight	វ៉ងវ៉ាង	wouŋwaj	boast

# Sanyok Sanha

Diacritic Sanyok Sanha សំយោគសញ្ញា ( ័ )

- Sanyok-sanha has the same value as the (- ័ ). It is used in a certain words which borrowed from Pali or Sakrit. Usually, if the final consonant is silent, the words can be spelled with different way.
- If the sanyok-sanha plus a final ឃ្ល, it is pronounced (ai) in the first series and (ei) in the second series.
- If the s sanyok-sanha plus a final ( ័ ) /r/, it is pronounced ( oa).

Example:

Words Without Trəysap			Word With Sanyok-sañā		
សក្តិ	saq	rank	ស័ក្តិ	saq	rank
ទព	toap	(no meaning)	ទ័ព	toap	Military
វាង	wiaᅇ	detour	វ៉ាំង បួ វាំង	waᅇ	royal palcace
សមយ	saqmoy	do not have meaning	សម័យ	saqmai	modern
ជ័រ	coa	emboidery	ជ័រ	coa	plastic, gum
ទំព័រ	tumpoo	(no meaning)	ទ័ព័រ	tumpoa	page

# Robaat

Diacritic Robaat រ៉ាបាត ( ̣ )

Robaat is the reflex of an original /r/ in Sanskrit words.

- In most words, when the (robaat) occurs over a final consonant, both consonant and the robaat is not pronounced.
- In some cases, the effect of robaat is to change the vowel/ឡ/ to /ឡ̣/.
- When robaat appears over a medial consonant, it is pronounced.



Example:

Words Without Robaat			Word With Robaat		
មាតា	miəkia	(no meaning)	មាតី	miəkia	path
បរិបូ	baaribou	(no meaning)	បរិបូណី	baaribou	plenty
ធម៌	thəɔm	(no meaning)	ធមី	thəɛr	dhama
អាចកំបាំង	qaatkamban	(no meaning)	អាចីកំបាំង	qaatkamban	mistry
ពត៌មាន	pəət miən	(no meaning)	ពតីមាន	pəə daa miən	News or Information

# Punctuation

## 1. Full and Partial Reduplication Sign Leiktoo ( ៗ )

Leiktoo is used to indicate that the word or phrase after which it occurs is to be repeated.

Words Without Leiktoo			Word With Leiktoo		
កេ្មង	kmeiŋ	kid	កេ្មងៗ	kmeiŋ kmeiŋ	kids
តូច	touc	small	តូចៗ	touc touc	very small
ចាស់	cah	old	ចាស់ៗ	cah cah	very old

Note: the words ( ឯទៀត ) means **others** in English) is not allowed you to leiktoo.

## 2. Punctuation Khan ( ។ )

This is Cambodian full stop. It occurs less frequently than the full stop in English. It can be at the end of a single sentence or several sentences dealing with a single topic.

## 3. Punctuation Baariyaosaan ( ។ )

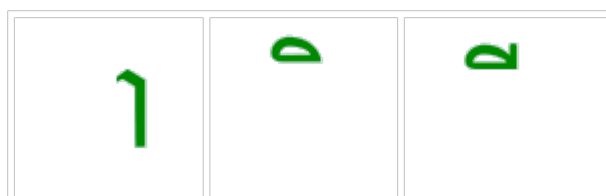
baariyaosaan is a full stop that marks the the entire end of a chapter or an entire text.

## 4. Punctuation Laq ( ។ )

Laq is used to indicate et cetera.



The Cambodian vowel may consist of one or a combination of elements written before, above, below, or after the initial consonant. There are 24 vowels in Khmer. Since the abstract vowel (aa) is embedded in a consonant, there are only 23 vowels shown in the table below. The pronunciation of a vowel in Khmer is determined by the series of the initial consonant that it accompanies. Click on the vowels to listen to the pronunciation of them and practice with the consonants.



2	2	
		1 2
2	2	
2	2	1
2	2	1
2	2	1
2	2	1
2	2	1

# ស្រៈ

## Vowel Positions







X <sub>1</sub>	X̂	X̄	X̆	Ẍ
X <sub>1</sub>	X <sub>2</sub>	X <sub>3</sub>	ខែ̂	ខេ̂
ខេ̂	ខែ̂	ខៃ̂	ខៃ̂	ខៃ̂
ខៃ̂	X̂ <sub>1</sub>	X̂	X <sub>1</sub>	X <sub>2</sub>
X <sub>1</sub> <sub>2</sub>	ខែ̂ <sub>2</sub>	ខៃ̂ <sub>2</sub>		

## ស្រៈពេញតួ

### Independent Vowels

Note:

- Independent vowels are known as */sraq piñ tuə/* (complete vowel) because they incorporate both an initial consonant and a vowel. Independent vowels ត ឿ ឌ ឺ ង ញ and ឱ include an initial */q-/* and are listed in the official dictionary along with other words that are spelled with an initial អ and the equivalent vowel.

- Independent vowel  and  include an initial /r/ and are listed in the official dictionary along with an initial  and the equivalent vowel.
- Independent vowel  and  includes an initial /l/ and are listed in the official dictionary along with an initial consonant .

# Khmer Number

## យើងរៀនលេខខ្មែរ

### យើងរៀនលេខខ្មែរ

 1	 2	 3	 4	 5
				
 6	 7	 8	 9	 0
				

#### Note:

- Cambodian numeral system based on five. From 6 to 9 is form by 5 + 1, 5 + 2, 5+3, and 5+4.
- Number 7 is pronounced (prampii) in reading or formal speech; in normal speech it pronounced (prampil).

# Ordinal Number

យើងរៀនលេខខ្មែរ

Khmer Ordinal Number

Number	Khmer	
០	សូន	soun (0)
១	មួយ	muay (1)
២	ពីរ	pii (2)
៣	បី	bay (3)
៤	បួន	buon (4)
៥	ប្រាំ	pram (5)
៦	ប្រាំមួយ	pram-muay (6)
៧	ប្រាំពីរ	pram-pii (7)
៨	ប្រាំបី	pram-bay (8)
៩	ប្រាំបួន	pram-buon (9)
១០	ដប់	dap (10)

១១	ដប់មួយ	dap muəy (11)
២០	ម្ភៃ	mephɿy (20)
២១	ម្ភៃមួយ	mephɿy muəy (21)
៣០	សាមសិប	saamsəp (30)
៣១	សាមសិបមួយ	saamsəp muəy (31)
៤០	សែសិប	saesəp (40)
៤១	សែសិបមួយ	saesəp muəy (41)
៥០	ហាសិប	haasəp (50)
៥១	ហាសិបមួយ	haasəp muəy (51)
៦០	ហុកសិប	hoksəp (60)
៦១	ហុកសិបមួយ	hoksəp muəy (61)
៧០	ចិតសិប	cətsəp (70)
៧១	ចិតសិបមួយ	cətsəp muəy (71)
៨០	ប៉ៃតសិប	paetsəp (80)
៨១	ប៉ៃតសិបមួយ	paetsəp muəy (81)
៩០	កៅសិប	kawsəp (90)

៩១	កៅសិបមួយ	kawsəp muəy (91)
១០០	មួយរយ	muəy rəy (100)
១០១	មួយរយមួយ	muəy rəy muəy (101)
១.០០០	មួយពាន់	muəy pǎən(1,000)
១០.០០០	មួយម៉ឺន	muəy məɲ (10,000)
១០០.០០០	មួយសែន	muəy saen (100,000)
១.០០០.០០០	មួយលាន	muəy liən (1,000,000)

**Note:**

- 📌 Cambodian numeral system based on five. From 6 to 9 is form by 5 + 1, 5 + 2, 5+3, and 5+4.
- 📌 Number 7 is pronounced (prampii) in reading or formal speech; in normal speech it pronounced (prampɿl).
- 📌 10,000 (muəy məɲ ) also can be counted as (dap pǎən).
- 📌 100,000 (muəy saen ) can be counted as ( dap məɲ) or (muəy rəy pǎən)
- 📌 From 11-19 the numbers are pronounced in two different forms, the written and a colloquial.
- 📌 In Cambodian numerals involving four or more symbols, a period is placed after every three symbols, counting from the right.



# Khmer Cardinal Number

## យើងរៀនលេខខ្មែរ

### Khmer Cardinal Number

The partical " ទី " is used to place in front of ordinal number in order to change the ordinal numver to Khmer cardinal number.

Example:

Number	Ordinal Number		Cardinal Number	
១	មួយ	muəy (1)	ទីមួយ	tii muəy (1st)
២	ពីរ	pii (2)	ទីពីរ	tii pii (2nd)
៣	បី	bəy (3)	ទីបី	tii bəy (3nd)
៤	បួន	buən (4)	ទីបួន	tii buən (4th)
៥	ប្រាំ	pram (5)	ទីប្រាំ	tii pram (5th)

#### Note:

- ☞ Cambodian numeral system based on five. From 6 to 9 is form by 5 + 1, 5 + 2, 5+3, and 5+4.
- ☞ Number 7 is pronouced (prampii) in reading or formal speech; in normal speech it pronouced (prampɨl).
- ☞ 10,000 (muəy mən ) also can be counted as (dap pǎən).
- ☞ 100,000 (muəy saen ) can be counted as ( dap mən ) or (muəy rəəy pǎən)
- ☞ From 11-19 the numbers are pronouced in two different forms, the written and a colloquial.
- ☞ In Cambodian numerals involving four or more symbols, a period is placed after every three symbols, counting from the right.

# Spoken Khmer Number

## យើងរៀនលេខខ្មែរ

### Spoken Khmer Number from 11 to 19

From 11-19 the numbers are pronounced in two different forms, the written and a colloquial.

Num	Khmer	Written Pronunciation	Colloquial
១១	ដប់មួយ	dap muəy	muəy dandap
១២	ដប់ពីរ	dap pii	pii dandap
១៣	ដប់បី	dap bəy	bəy dandap
១៤	ដប់បួន	dap buən	buən dandap
១៥	ដប់ប្រាំ	dap pram	pram dandap
១៦	ដប់ប្រាំមួយ	dap pram muəy	pram muəy dandap
១៧	ដប់ប្រាំពីរ	dap pram pii	pram pii dandap
១៨	ដប់ប្រាំបី	dap pram bəy	pram bəy dandap
១៩	ដប់ប្រាំបួន	dap pram buən	pram buən dandap

#### Note:

- Cambodian numeral system based on five. From 6 to 9 is form by 5 + 1, 5 + 2, 5+3, and 5+4.
- Number 7 is pronounced (prampii) in reading or formal speech; in normal speech it pronounced

(prampɿ).

10,000 (muəy mən ) also can be counted as (dap pǎn).

100,000 (muəy saen ) can be counted as ( dap mən) or (muəy rəy pǎn)

In Cambodian numerals involving four or more symbols, a period is placed after every three symbols, counting from the right.

# CAMBODIAN CURRENCY

## ប្រាក់រៀល កម្ពុជា

### CAMBODIAN CURRENCY

Cambodian has its own currency.

ក្រដាសប្រាក់		NOTES	
១០០ រៀល	២០០ រៀល	៥០០ រៀល	១.០០០ រៀល
២.០០០ រៀល	៥.០០០ រៀល	១០.០០០ រៀល	២០.០០០ រៀល
៥០.០០០ រៀល	១០០.០០០ រៀល		

១០០ រៀល

ខាងមុខ

ខាងក្រោយ



២០០ រៀល

ខាងមុខ

ខាងក្រោយ



២០០ រៀល

ខាងមុខ

ខាងក្រោយ



១.០០០ រៀល

ខាងមុខ

ខាងក្រោយ



២.០០០ រៀល

ខាងមុខ

ខាងក្រោយ



៥.០០០ រៀល

ខាងមុខ

ខាងក្រោយ







១០.០០០ រៀល

ខាងមុខ

ខាងក្រោយ



២០.០០០ រៀល

ខាងមុខ

ខាងក្រោយ



៥០.០០០ រៀល

ខាងមុខ

ខាងក្រោយ



១០០.០០០ រៀល

ខាងមុខ

ខាងក្រោយ



## ការសន្ទនា CONVERSATION

### Unit 1

Common Form of Addressing People with Formal and Informal

Pronoun	Khmer	Word Substitute Pronoun	IPA	How to use
I	ខ្ញុំ	ខ្ញុំ	kñom	Refer to yourself
		អញ	qañ	It can be only used with very close friend. Otherwise is an impolite word - too informal and aggressive.
you	អ្នក	អ្នក	něəq	Address to people who is approximately at the same age (You).
		បង	baaj	Address someone who is approximately at the same age or older. (older brother or sister).
		លោក	look	Address to some one in a formal used (Mr.).

she	នាង	នាង	niəŋ	General use, address by older lady to younger lady
		កញ្ញា	kañña	Address to young unmarried lady in a formal used (Miss.)
		អ្នកនាងកញ្ញា	něəŋ niəŋ kañña	Address to young unmarried lady. For formal used (Miss.).
		បងស្រី	baəŋ srəy	Address to someone who is approximately at the same age or older than you ( older sister).
		ប្អូនស្រី	pqoun srəy	Address to someone who is younger than you (younger sister).
		លោកស្រី	look srəy	Address to some one in a formal used (Mrs.).
		មីង	miij	Address to someone who is older than you (aunt).
		អ៊ុំស្រី	qum srəy	Address to someone who is much older than you ( great aunt).
		លោកជំទាវ	look cumtiəw	Address to a high status lady in a respectful maner and in formal used (Her Excellency).



		គាត់	kǎət	Address to all adults.
		អ្នក	něəq	Commonly use. It refer to all adults.
		បង	baaŋ	Refer to someone who is approximately at the same age or older than you (brother)
		បងប្រុស	baaŋ proh	Refer to someone who is approximately at the same age or older than you (brother)
he		ពូ	puu	Refer to someone who is older than you (Uncle)
		អ៊ុំប្រុស	qum proh	Refer to someone who is much older than you (Uncle)
		លោក	look	Mr. commonly use.
		ឯកឧត្តម	qaeq qudom	His Excellency, Refer to a high status gentleman and It is a formal use.
		លោកឯកឧត្តម	look qaeq qudom	Address to a high status gentleman in a respectful maner and it is a formal used (His Excellency).
it		វា	wiə	Refer to children. Refer to animal. address to people but in a non face-to-face.
we		យើង	yəəŋ	Commonly use for (we).
		ពួកយើង	puəq yəəŋ	A group of people.
they		ពួកគេ	puəq kee	Agroup of people. (they).
		ពួកគេទាំងអស់	puəq kee təəŋ qah	A group of people (They all)

Note:

In Khmer tradition, It is important to address people by using the titles or word that sustitute pronounce in the table above at the very beginning of the converstation. The addressing words should be at the beginning or end of phrase. Because these words could express the respect of

the speaker to the listeners. For example, in the greeting phrase "How are you?", it would be more polite to say "How are you baay ? [cuum riəp suə baay]" or "baay how are you?[ baay cuum riəp suə ]".

In Khmer, people use titles such as word like Mr., Mrs. and Miss much more than in America, when speaking to people of the same age and social status. It is customary to use the title (look) in front of the first name of the person to who you are speaking. In formal situations the first and last names are used, preceded by the words Mr. (look), Mrs., (look srəy), or Miss (kañña).

In Khmer the family name come first and the given name or first name comes last unlike in English. In speaking to Europeans the Khmer often use the title look with the first name of the person being addressed. Thus if your name is Paul Henry, you might be called look Paul or look Paul Henry. But it would not seem quite natural for Cambodian to call Paul alone.

## Lesson 1: Greeting Phrases and Polite Responses

### មេរៀនទី១: ប្រយោគគួរសម និង ការឆ្លើយតប

In this lesson you will learn how to greet people properly according to their genders and ages in a polite way.

Listen to the Greeting below

Greeting		Response by a man	
ជំរាបសួរ		បាទ ជំរាបសួរ	
cum riəp suə	Hello	baat cum riəp suə	Hello

Listen to the Greeting below

Greeting, young to the old person		Response by the older person	
ជំរាបសួរ លោកអ៊ី		បាទ ជំរាបសួរ	
cum riəp suə look qum	Hello	baat cum riəp suə	Hello

Listen to the Greeting below

Greeting, young to very old man		Response by old person	
ជំរាបសួរ		លើកដៃថ្វាយព្រះ	

លោកតា			
cum riəp suə look taa	Hello	ləək-day thway- prəəh	Hello

Listen to the Greeting below

Greeting		Response by a man	
សួស្ដី		បាទ សួស្ដី	
suə sdəy	Hello	baat suə sdəy	Hello

Listen to the Greeting below

Greeting		Response by a lady	
ជំរាបសួរ		ថាស ជំរាបសួរ	
cum riəp suə	Hello	caa cum riəp suə	Hello

Listen to the Greeting below

Greeting from the same age		Response by a lady same age	
សួស្ដី		ថាស សួស្ដី	
suə sdəy	Hello	caah suə sdəy	Hello

## Lesson 2: Meeting Friend on the Street

### មេរៀនទី២ ជួបមិត្តភក្ដិតាមផ្លូវ

••• In this lesson you will learn how to greet in a traditional way. John and Sok are friends. John meets sok on the street, when he is on his way to te market and John invites Sok to the market with him.

Listen to the Whole Conversation

លោកចន: ទៅណាហ្នឹង សុខ ?

លោកសុខ: ទៅណោះ មួយភ្លែត។ ចុះចនទៅណាដែរ?

លោកចន: ទៅផ្សារ ។ ប្រញាប់បន្តិច លាសិនហើយណា។

លោកសុខ: បាទ ។

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English
ទៅណាហ្នឹង សុខ ?	tɛw naa nɛŋ sok ?	Where are you going Sok ?
ទៅណោះ មួយភ្លែត។ ចុះចនទៅណាដែរ ?	tɛw noh muøy plɛt. coh tɛw naa John dae?	I am going over there for a moment. And what about you, John?
ទៅផ្សារ ប្រញាប់បន្តិច លាសិនហើយណា។	tɛw psaa. brɔŋnap bantec. Liə sen haøy naa.	go to the market. I am in a hurry. Bye bye now.
បាទ	Baat	Yes

Note:

\*\*\*In spoken, the subject of a sentence sometime is not as important as in English. For example:

Spoken Language

ទៅណោះ មួយភ្លែត

ទៅផ្សារ

ប្រញាប់បន្តិច

Full Sentence

ខ្ញុំទៅណោះ មួយភ្លែត

ខ្ញុំទៅផ្សារ

ខ្ញុំប្រញាប់បន្តិច

# លាសិនហើយណា។

# ខ្ញុំលាសិនហើយណា។

- The greeting phrase "ទៅណាហ្នឹង សុខ ?" is very common in spoken Khmer. This greeting is a short form of "លោកសុខអញ្ជើញទៅណា ?" which is formal.
- The particle "ណា" in greeting phrase "ទៅណាហ្នឹង សុខ ?" is an interrogative adjective. It is used to form a question requiring specific information. The full form of particle "ណា" in the interrogative adjective is "ឯណា".
- Phrase "លាសិនហើយណា" is a short form of phrase "ខ្ញុំលាសិនហើយណា"
- The particle "ណា" in phrase "លាសិនហើយណា" is a final hortatory particle. It is used at the end of imperative sentences to soften the command or to solicit compliance. You can learn how learn how to use "ណា" in the grammar page in this unit.

## Lesson 3: Meeting Old Friend

### មេរៀនទី៣: ជួបមិត្តចាស់

In this lesson you will learn how greet friend who has not met for a long time.

Listen to the Whole Conversation

លោក ផល: សួស្ដី សុខា  
 លោកស្រីសុខា: ចាស សួស្ដីផល  
 យ៉ាងម៉េចហើយ ?  
 លោក ផល: អត់អីទេ ចុះសុខា ?  
 លោកស្រីសុខា: ធម្មតា

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English
សួស្ដី សុខា	suə sdəy sokha	Hello or Hi Sokha.

<p>ចាស សួស្ដីផល យ៉ាងម៉េចហើយ?</p>	<p>caah suə sdəy, Paul. yang meich haəy ?</p>	<p>Hello or Hi, Paul. How is everything?</p>
<p>អត់អីទេ ចុះសុខា?</p>	<p>qat qii tee. coh sokha</p>	<p>I am fine ( I am o.k), and Sokha?</p>
<p>ធម្មតា</p>	<p>thǎəmmədaa</p>	<p>As usual</p>

Note:

- ▶ The phrase (អត់អីទេ) is literally means (Nothing) or (Nothing wrong)
- ▶ The question (យ៉ាងម៉េចហើយ?) is a short form of question (អ្នកយ៉ាងម៉េចហើយ?)
- ▶ The response partical ចាស (caah) by women is a polite acknowledgment of a previous utterance speech by other speakers, whether the previous utterance was a statement or a question. Following a question, the occurrence of a response particle as the sole constituent of the response implies affirmation.
- ▶ A negative reply is indicated by a response particle followed by the negative final particle ទេ (ចាសទេ) or by ទេ alone.
- ▶ In exchange between equals, response particles tend to be discontinued after the initial exchanges.
- ▶ The exchange between a superior and an inferior, response particles tend to be used through the exchange by the inferior, but may be discontinued or not used at all by the superior party in the exchange.
- ▶ Response particles usually occur with a falling intonational contour.

## Lesson 4: Back from Work in the Province

### មេរៀនទី៤: ត្រឡប់ពីធ្វើការតាមខេត្ត

Listen to the Whole Conversation

លោកស្រីធីតា: សុខសប្បាយទេ សន ?

លោក សន: បាទ សុខសប្បាយ។ ចុះធីតា វិញ ?

លោកស្រីធីតា: ចាស សុខសប្បាយ ប៉ុន្តែរវល់មែនទែន។

# លោក សនៈ ខ្ញុំ ក៏អញ្ចឹងដែរ ។

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English
សុខសប្បាយទេ សន ?	sok sabaay ciə tee San?	How are you Sorn ?
បាទ សុខសប្បាយ។ ចុះធីតា វិញ ?	baat, sok sabaay. coh thiidaa wɨəŋ ?	Yes, I am fine. What about you (name)
ចាស សុខសប្បាយ ប៉ុន្តែរវល់មែនទេន។	caah sok sabaay. pontae rɔwŋəl maen taen.	Yes, I am fine but very busy.
ខ្ញុំ ក៏អញ្ចឹងដែរ ។	kñom Kaa qaŋcəŋ dae.	So am I.

Note:

- ⊕ The question (ចុះធីតា វិញ ? ) consists of particles (ចុះ ) and (វិញ ). The question can be shorten as (ចុះធីតា ? )
- ⊕ Particle (ចុះ ) is an interjection. It occurs with a constrastive function before questions which shift attention to a second person.
- ⊕ (វិញ ) is a constrastive particle, which means "back again", on the other hand, in a reverse direction. You can see more example in lesson 5.
- ⊕ The response partical ចាស (caah) by women and បាទ (baat) by man are polite acknowledgment of a previous utterance speech by other speakers, whether the previous utterance was a statement or a question. Following a question, the occurrence of a response particle as the sole constituent of the response implies affirmation.
- ⊕ A negative reply is indicated by a response particle followed by the negative final particle ទេ (ចាសទេ ) and (បាទទេ ) or by ទេ alone.
- ⊕ In exchange between equals, response particles tend to be discontinued after the initial exchanges.
- ⊕ The exchange between a superior and an inferior, response particles tend to be used through the exchange by the inferior, but may be discontinued or not used at all by the superior party in the exchange.
- ⊕ Response particles usually occur with a falling intonational contour.

# Lesson 5: Visiting Grand Father in the Village

## មេរៀនទី៥: ទៅលេងតាទៅភូមិ

■ Sok visited his grand father in a village. In this conversation, you will learn how to greet older people in an informal way.

សុខ: ជំរាបសួរ លោកតា។

តាចាន់: លើកដៃថ្វាយព្រះ។

សុខ: សុខសប្បាយទេ តា ?

តាចាន់: បាទ សុខសប្បាយ។ ចុះចៅ វិញ ?

សុខ: បាទសុខសប្បាយ ។

តាចាន់: សូមអញ្ជើញអង្គុយ ចៅ ?

សុខ: បាទ អរគុណ។

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English
ជំរាបសួរ លោកតា	cum riəp suə taa ?	Hello grand father ?
លើកដៃថ្វាយព្រះ	ləəq day thwaay prəəh.	Pray to God.
សុខសប្បាយទេ តា ?	sok sabaay tee taa ?	How are you doing grand father?
បាទ សុខសប្បាយ។ ចុះចៅ?	baat, sok sabaay. coh caw.	Yes I am fine and what about you, grand child?
បាទសុខសប្បាយ ។	baat, sok sabaay.	Yes I am fine.
សូមអញ្ជើញអង្គុយ ចៅ	soum qaŋcəəŋ qaŋkuy caw.	Please take a seat grand child.



បាទ អរគុណ

baat qaa kun.

Yes, thank you

Note:

■ The phrase (លើកដៃថ្វាយព្រះ) is commonly used to address by the old person to the young one.

Lesson 6: Meeting at the Office

មេរៀនទី៦: ជួបគ្នានៅការិយាល័យ

Listen to the Whole Conversation 

លោក ផល: ជំរាបសួរ លោក។

លោកសំណាង: បាទ ជំរាបសួរ។ សូមទោស

លោកមានការអីដែរ ។

លោក ផល: បាទ ខ្ញុំចង់ជួបលោក សំណាង។

លោកសំណាង: បាទ ខ្ញុំគឺសំណាង។ សូមទោស

លោកឈ្មោះអីដែរ ?

លោក ផល: បាទ ខ្ញុំឈ្មោះ ផល ?

លោកសំណាង: ខ្ញុំសប្បាយចិត្តណាស់ ដែលបានជួបលោក។

លោក ផល: ខ្ញុំក៏អញ្ជឹងដែរ ។

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English
ជំរាបសួរ លោក។	cum riəp suə look	Hello sir.
បាទជំរាបសួរ។ សូមទោស លោកមានការអីដែរ។	baat cum riəp suə. somtoh look miəŋ kaa qəy dae?	Hello sir. Excuse me, what can I do for you?

<p>បាទ ខ្ញុំចង់ជួបលោក សំណាង។</p>	<p>baat kñom caŋ cuəp look samnaaŋ</p>	<p>Yes, I would like to see Mr. Samnang.</p>
<p>បាទខ្ញុំគឺសំណាង។សូមទោស លោកឈ្មោះអីដែរ ?</p>	<p>baat kñom kɨ samnaŋ. somtoh look chmuh qəy dae</p>	<p>Yes, I am Samnang. Excuse me, what is your name?</p>
<p>បាទ ខ្ញុំឈ្មោះ ផល ?</p>	<p>baat kñom chmuh Paul</p>	<p>Yes, I am Paul.</p>
<p>ខ្ញុំសប្បាយចិត្តណាស់ ដែលបានជួបលោក។</p>	<p>kñom sabaay cət nah dael baan cuəp look.</p>	<p>I am very happy to see you.</p>
<p>ខ្ញុំក៏អញ្ចឹងដែរ ។</p>	<p>kñom kaa qaŋcəŋ dae</p>	<p>So am I.</p>

# Useful Words and Phrases

This is a list of all the words and expressions used in this unit. It is for reference only, but you should know all of these before going on to the next unit. You may print it out to study at home.

Cambodian	Transcription	English
កុំរំលឹកអី	kom rumlik qəy	Don't mention it.
ខ្ញុំមិនចេះនិយាយខ្មែរទេ	kñom mɨn ceh niyɨəy khmae tee.	I don't speak Khmer.
គ្មានបញ្ហា	kmɨən pañha	No problem.
ចាស	caah	Yes (for woman)
ចាំបាច់	cambac	Necessary
ជួបគ្នាថ្ងៃក្រោយ ឬថ្ងៃក្រោយជួបគ្នា	cuəb kniə tɕay kraoy (or) tɕay kraoy cuəb kniə	See you other day.
ជួបគ្នាពេលក្រោយ	cuəb kniə peel kraoy	See you next time.
ជំរាបលា	cum riəp liə	Good bye (very polite)
ជំរាបសួរ	cum riəp suə	Hello (very polite)
ភាសា	piə saa	Language
តាមសំរួល	taam som ruəl	Take it easy.
ត្រូវហើយ	trəw haəy	That's right.
បាទ	bat	Yes (for man)
មានការអី	miən kaa qəy	What can I help you?

មានរឿងអី ?	mion rəŋ qəy ?	What is the matter?	
មានបញ្ហាអី ?	mion pañha qəy ?	What is the problem?	
មិនត្រូវទេ	mɨn trəw tee	That's not correct.	
មិនស្រួលខ្លួន	mɨn sruəl kluən tee	Not fine.	
មិនអីទេ	mɨn qəy tee	Never mind	
មែន	mɛɛn	Of course	
យល់	yǔəl	Understand	
ល្អ	lqa	Good	
ល្អណាស់	lqa nah	Very good	
លាសិនហើយ	liə sin haəy	See you later	
លោក	look	Mr. (formal)	
លោកស្រី	look srəy	Mrs. (formal)	
លោកអញ្ជើញទៅណា ?	look qañcəəñ tɨw naa ?	Where are you going?	
លោកទើបមកពីណា ?	look təəp məək pii naa ?	Where have you been?	
លោកមានកូនប៉ុន្មាន ?	look mion koun ponmaan?	How many children do you have?	
លោកមានអាយុប៉ុន្មាន ?	look mion qaayuyq ponmaan ?	How old are you?	
លោកមកពីប្រទេសណា ?	look məək pii prateeh naa?	Where are you from?	

លោកស្នាក់នៅកន្លែងណា?	look snak nɔw kanlaen naa?	where do you stay?	
សុខសប្បាយ	sok sabaay	I am fine	
សុខសប្បាយជាទេ ?	sok sabaay ciə tee	How are you? (Are you well?)	
សុខភាពល្អ	sokaphiəp lqaa	Good health	
សុខសប្បាយតាមផ្លូវ	sok sabaay tam pləw	Have a good trip	
សូមស្វាគមន៍	soum swaakum	Welcome	
សូមទោស	soum tooh	sorry and excuse me	
សូមអញ្ជើញអង្គុយ	soum qañcəəñ qəŋkuy	Please sit down	
សូមអញ្ជើញចូលលេង	soum qañcəəñ coul leen	Please come in	
សួស្ដី	suə sdəy	Hello (for friend)	
សំណាងល្អ	sam naaŋ lqaa	Good luck	
អរគុណ	qaa kun	Thank you	
អបអរសាទរ	qab qaa saa təw	Congratulation	
អត់អីទេ	qat qəy tee	Nothing (never mind)	
និយាយ	niyiəy	Speak	
អរុណសួស្ដី	qaa run suə sdəy	Good morning	
ទិវាសួស្ដី	ti wiə suə sdəy	Good afternoon	
សាយ័នសួស្ដី	saay yəən suə sdəy	Good evening	
រាត្រីសួស្ដី	riə trəy suə sdəy	Good night	



# Grammar

## I. Personal Pronouns:

A. First Person,

B. Second Person,

C. Third Person

## II. Intonation:

A. Statement,

B. Question

C. Question Particle ( តាម ) តើ

## III. Question and Answer:

A. Question Requesting for Specific in Formation (Where) ណា and (What) អ្វី (Informal or Spoken) អ្វី (Formal)





B. Question Requiring Yes (បាទ ) or No ( បាទ ) Answer

C. Response Particles: Yes បាទ (Man) បាទ (Woman)

## I. Personal Pronouns

One of the most difficult problems in Khmer for a foreign student is the choice of appropriate pronouns, because they are context oriented. For example the personal pronoun are determined by the status of the speakers to the addressee. Thus there are no general pronouns such as "you" which are appropriate for all situation. The tables below provide the commonest Khmer personal pronoun and their explanation:

### A. First Person

Singular		
Khmer	IPA	How to use
ខ្ញុំ	kñom	It is a polite pronoun, used to address to the elder and same age person. "I" 
ខ្ញុំបាទ	kñom baat	This pronoun is used the same way as "ខ្ញុំ". "I" 
គ្នា	kniə	It is a polite word, used to address to the same age person. "I" 
អញ	qañ	It is an impolite word, used to address to unrespectable person. Sometime, it can be used with closed friend but it is very sensitive. I 

would suggest not to use this pronounce. "I"

Example:

Khmer	English
ខ្ញុំទៅសាលារៀន	I go to school
គ្នាដើរទៅផ្សារ សុខចង់ទៅផ្សារជាមួយគ្នា ?	I walk to the market, Do you want to go with me Sok?

Plural		
Khmer	IPA	How to use
យើង	yəəŋ	It is a polite pronounce, used to address with the elder, younger and the same age people. "We"
យើងខ្ញុំ	yəəŋ kʰom	This pronounce is used the same as pronounce "យើង". "We"
ពួកយើង	puəq yəəŋ	This pronounce is used the same as pronounce "យើង". "We"
ពួកគ្នា	puəq kniə	This pronounce is used the same as pronounce "យើង". "We"



Example:

Khmer	English
យើងចង់រៀនខ្មែរ។	We want to study Khmer.
យើងខ្ញុំជានិស្សិត	We are students.
ពួកយើងរៀនខ្មែរជាមួយលោកគ្រូសំ	We study Khmer with teacher Sam.




## B. Second Person



Singular		
Khmer	IPA	How to use
លោក	look	It is a polite masculine pronounce, used to address to the elder, younger or the inferior to the superior in a formal situation. "You" or "Mr."
លោកស្រី	look srəy	It is a polite feminine pronounce, used to address to the elder, younger or the inferior to the superior in a formal situation. "You" or "Mrs."




អ្នក	něəq	Address to people who is approximately at the same age (You).	
ឯង	qaeng	It is an impolite pronoun, used to address to the younger. "You"	

**Example:**

Khmer	English
លោកចង់ពិសារគុយទាវទេ ?	 Do you want to eat noodle soup?
លោកស្រីស្នាក់នៅឯណា ?	 Where do you stay?
អ្នកឈ្មោះអី ?	 What is your name?




Plural		
Khmer	IPA	How to use
អស់លោក	qah look	It is a polite masculine pronoun, used to address to the elder, younger or the inferior to the superior in a formal situation. "You all" or "Mr. all" 
អស់អ្នក	qah nəəq	It is a pronoun that is used to address to a group of approximately the same age people. "You all" 

**Example:**

Khmer	English
អស់លោកមកពីប្រទេសណា ?	 Where are you all from?
អស់អ្នកស្នាក់នៅឯណា ?	 Where do you all stay?



**C. Third Person**

Singular		
Khmer	IPA	How to use
វា	wiə	It is used to address from the superior to the inferior, adult to child, otherwise insulting, human to animal "It" 
គាត់	kəət	It is a polite unisex pronoun that is used to address respectfully from younger to older, adult to adult. "He or She" 
គេ	kee	It is used to address to people that we don't know. "He, She, One, or Someone" 

នាង

It is a polite feminine pronoun that is used to address respectfully from the elder to the younger. "He or She".



Example:

Khmer	English
ក្មេងនេះវាមកពីណា ?	Where is this kid come from?
គាត់រៀនខ្មែរនៅសាលាណា ?	At what school does he or she study Khmer?
គេចង់ទៅណា ?	Where is he or she want to go?
នាងនោះធ្វើការអីនៅស្រុកខ្មែរ ?	What does she do for a living in Cambodia?

Plural			
Khmer	IPA	How to use	
ពួកវា	puəq wia	It is used to address from the superior to a group inferior, adult to a group of children, or human to a group of animal "They all"	
ពួកគាត់	puəq köət	It is used to address to a group of the same age people or to a group of older people. "They all"	
ពួកគេ	puəq kee	It is used to address to a group of unknown people. "They all"	
ពួកនាង	puəq niəŋ	It is used to address from the older people to a group of young feminine. "They all"	

Example:

Khmer	English
ថ្ងៃនេះមានក្មេងច្រើនណាស់មកលេង ពួកវាមកពីណា ?	Today, there are many children in this park. where are they all from.
ពួកគាត់រៀនខ្មែរនៅសាលាណា ?	At what school do they study Khmer?
ពួកគេចង់ទៅណា ?	Where do they want to go?
ពួកនាងធ្វើការអីនៅស្រុកខ្មែរ ?	What do they do for a living in Cambodia?

Note:

▶ Cambodian has a much larger number of pronouns than English. In Cambodian pronoun reflect gender, relative age, and social status.



## II. Intonation: Statement, Question and Question Particle

### A. The Statement

Statements are normally accompanied by a falling contour on the last words of the sentence, for example:

Khmer	English
ខ្ញុំ សុខសប្បាយជាទេ	I am quite well.

Rising contour may also occur at the end of statements. In this case, the statement seems to be obvious, for example:

Khmer	English
ខ្ញុំ សុខសប្បាយជាទេ	I am fine [of course]



### B. The Question

Questions are usually accompanied by rising contour on the last words of the sentence. The rising contour question reflects deference, politeness and formality, for example:

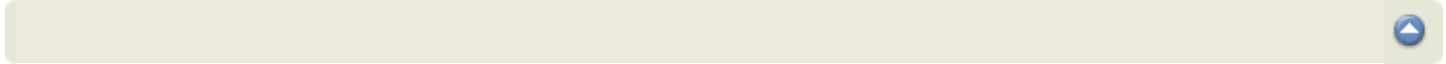
Khmer	English
លោកអញ្ជើញទៅណា ?	Where are you going, Sir?

### C. The Question Particle ( Taə) តើ

The question particle ( តើ ) are always occurs at the beginning of an interrogative clause in formal questions. When the question particle ( តើ ) is used, it signal the fact that a question follows and the rising and falling intonation of question is not necessary.

**For example:**

Khmer	English
លោកអញ្ជើញទៅណា ?	Where are you going, Sir?
តើលោកអញ្ជើញទៅណា ?	Where are you going, Sir?



### III. Questions and Answers:

Questions are formed in three ways in Cambodian, question requesting specific information, question requiring a yes or now answer and the question that occur without question particle or question words.



#### A. Questions Requesting Specific Information.

Questions requesting specific information require a question words for example: Question words:

**Where** ណា (naa) , **What** អី (qay)  or អ្វី (qway) 

Question	Answer
ទៅណាហ្នឹង សុខ ?	ខ្ញុំទៅណោះ មួយភ្លែត។
លោកអញ្ជើញទៅណា ?	ខ្ញុំទៅសាលា។
លោកមានការអីដែរ ។	ខ្ញុំចង់ជួបលោក សំណាង។
អ្នកឈ្មោះអ្វី ?	ខ្ញុំឈ្មោះ ផល។

#### B. Questions Requiring Yes or No Answer:

Question requiring yes- or-no answer require a final question particle ទេ (tee) . The full form of particle (tee) is ឬទេ (rtee) .

Question	Answer
លោកសុខសប្បាយ ទេ ? or	បាទ ខ្ញុំសុខសប្បាយទេ។
លោកស្រីសុខសប្បាយ ឬទេ ?	ចាស ខ្ញុំសុខសប្បាយទេ។

C. Response Particles: Yes បាទ (baat)  ចាស (caah)

- ▶ The function of the response particles បាទ (a respond by men) and ចាស (a respond by women) is a polite acknowledgment of a previous utterance speech by other speakers, whether the previous utterance was a statement or a question. Following a question, the occurrence of a response particle as the sole constituent of the response implied affirmation.
- ▶ A negative reply is indicated by a response particle followed by the negative final particle ទេ or by ទេ alone.
- ▶ In exchange between equals, response particles tend to be discontinued after the initial exchanges.
- ▶ The exchange between a superior and an inferior, response particles tend to be used through the exchange by the inferior, but may be discontinued or not used at all by the superior party in the exchange.
- ▶ Response particles usually occur with a falling intonation contour.

Example:

Khmer	Response by women	Response by men
លោកសុខសប្បាយទេ ?	ចាស 	បាទ 
លោកស្រីទៅរៀនទេ ?	ចាទេ 	បាទទេ 

## Greeting and Politeness



Traditionally Khmer people have many forms of greeting one another: The following are the explanation of how use those greeting forms.

### 1. Smiling

Smiling is a form of greeting for Cambodia tradition. For people who work together, smiling to each other at the first meeting of the working day is considered as greeting.

**2. Question: (... ទើបមកពីណាហ្នឹង ?) (... mɔək pii naa nɛŋ ?)**

In English means ( Where have you been?) This greeting question does not sound polite in Western culture, but it is very common and friendly in Khmer.

**3. Question: (... ទៅណាហ្នឹង ?) (... taw naa nɛŋ ? )**

In English means "Where are you going?" This question does not sound polite in Western culture, but it is very friendly and common which is always used for the greeting in Khmer culture. In this question form of greeting, learners must add the pronoun explain in the lesson [How to address People \(Pronoun\)](#)

**4. Question: (... យ៉ាងម៉េចហើយ ?) (... yang meich haəy ?)**

In English means " How is it going" or "What's up". This is a greeting question which is often used between close friends, or from the elder to the younger people.

**5. Greeting kinships**

Most often, if younger people meet the elder people who they know well, for example, family members, relatives, neighbours, teacher and so on, they use the term of kinships to greet the elders. Those words are introduced in lesson on [How to address People \(Pronoun\)](#)

**6. ជំរាបសួរ (Chum riəb suə)**

The greeting ( ជំរាបសួរ ) is quite formal form. We usually say ( ជំរាបសួរ ) to

- ⊕ Greeting people when we meet them the first time.
- ⊕ Greeting older people when we visit them.
- ⊕ Greeting the teacher or someone who is highly respected.
- ⊕ Greeting Foreigners.

The older people rarely say ជំរាបសួរ to children or younger kids. The words should not be used every time you see each other at the work place. In case of regular meeting at the office, people use the smiling greeting instead of the words ជំរាបសួរ.

Usually the ជំរាបសួរ come with the join hands gesture as shown on the picture about. That is the way of greeting the elder in the Khmer culture. However, we do not join hands to greet vendors in the market even if they are elders.

**7. សុខសប្បាយទេ ? or សុខសប្បាយជាទេ ? (sok sabay tee? ) or ( sok sabay chie tee?)**

In English means "How are you?" The form សុខសប្បាយទេ ? is quite formal also. We do not use this form for every day meeting at the office as in English ( How are you). People use the smiling greeting instead of the words សុខសប្បាយទេ ?.

Greeting សុខសប្បាយទេ ? is used also after a long absence.

In Khmer, people use titles such as word like Mr., Mrs. and Miss much more than in America, when speaking to people of the same age and social status. It is customary to use the title (look) in front of the first name of the person to who you are speaking. In formal situations the first and last names are used, preceded by the words Mr. (look), Mrs., (look srəy), or Miss (kañña).

In Khmer the family name come first and the given name or first name comes last unlike in English. In speaking to Europeans the Khmer often use the title look with the first name of the person being addressed. Thus if your name is Paul Henry, you might be called look Paul or look Paul Henry. But it would not seem quite natural for Cambodian to call Paul alone.

## PRONUNCIATION

I.	<u>Pronunciation question particle</u> អី (qəy) or អ៊ី (qəwəy)	"What"
II.	<u>Response Particle for Men</u> បាទ (baat)	"Yes"
III.	<u>Response Particle for Women</u> បាទ (caah)	"Yes"
IV.	<u>Pronunciation for word</u> ឃ្លែង (nɨŋ)	"Right now"
V.	<u>Pronunciation for word</u> មួយភ្លែត (muəy plɛt)	"For a moment"

### I. Pronunciation question particle អី (qəy) or អ៊ី (qəwəy) "What"

- អី (qəy) is an informal question particle which is used to questioning in spoken only. Click on the speaker to listen to the pronunciation.
- អ៊ី (qəwəy) is the correct question particle, it is used both in spoken and written. Click on the speaker to listen to the pronunciation and practice the word.

### II. Response Particle for Men បាទ (baat) "Yes"

- The polite response particle for men បាទ (baat) "Yes" has two pronunciation baat or baa.
- បាទ (baat) is the correct respond which is used in written and conversation. Click on the speaker to listen to the pronunciation and practice the word
- បា (baa) is used in spoken form and in a very informal only. Click on the speaker to listen to the pronunciation and practice the word.

### III. Response Particle for Women ចាស (caah) "Yes"

- The polite response particle for women ចាស (caah) "Yes" has two written form ចា៖ (caah) and ចាស (caah) and two pronunciations. Both of them are equally have the same value. Click on the speakers to listen to the pronunciation and practice the word.

### IV. Pronunciation of word ហ្នឹង (nɨŋ) "Right now"

- The word ហ្នឹង is pronounced (nɨŋ). The consonant ហ is silent. This word is rarely stand alone by itself. This word, usually appeared at the end of a sentence. Click on the speaker to listen to the pronunciation and practice the word.

### V. Pronunciation of មួយភ្លែត (muəy plɛət) "one moment"







- Literally the phrase មួយភ្លែត (muəy plɛət) is translated as (one flash). Click on the speaker to listen to the pronunciation and practice the word.
- In spoken មួយភ្លែត is pronounced as ម៉ាភ្លែត (maa plɛət). Click on the speaker to listen to the pronunciation and practice the word.

# Unit 2








## Lesson 1: People in the Family

### មេរៀនទី១: មនុស្សក្នុងគ្រួសារ

#### Listen to the Whole Conversation

- ធី: សូមទោស គ្រួសារលោកមានមនុស្សប៉ុន្មាននាក់ ? 
- សុខ: បាទ ទាំងអស់មានប្រាំពីរនាក់ គឺ ឪពុកម្តាយខ្ញុំ បងស្រី បងប្រុស ប្អូនស្រី ប្អូនប្រុស ហើយនិងខ្ញុំ។ 
- ធី: បងស្រីលោកអាយុប៉ុន្មាន ? 
- សុខ: គាត់អាយុសាមសិបឆ្នាំ។ 
- ធី: ចុះលោកអាយុប៉ុន្មាន ? 
- សុខ: ខ្ញុំអាយុម្ភៃបួនឆ្នាំ។ 











Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
សូមទោស គ្រួសារលោកមាន មនុស្សប៉ុន្មាន នាក់ ?	soum tooh, kruəsaa look miəŋ mənuh ponmaan naq ?	Excuse me, how many people are there in your family?	
បាទ ទាំងអស់មានប្រាំពីរ នាក់ គឺ ខ្ញុំ ពុកម្តាយខ្ញុំ បងស្រី បងប្រុស ប្អូនស្រី ប្អូនប្រុស ហើយនិងខ្ញុំ។	baat, tǎəŋ qah miəŋ pram pii naq kɨ qəwpuk mdaay kɨŋom baŋsrəy baŋproh pəounsrəy pəounproh haəy nɨŋ kɨŋom.	There are seven people altogether. My father, mother, an older sister, an older brother, a younger brother, a younger sister and myself.	
បងស្រីលោក អាយុប៉ុន្មានហើយ ?	baŋsrəy look qaayu ponmaan haəy ?	How old is your older sister?	
គាត់អាយុសាមសិបឆ្នាំ។	kǎət qaayu məphɨy buəŋ chnam.	She is thirty years old.	
ចុះលោកអាយុប៉ុន្មាន ?	coh look qaayu ponmaan?	And how old are you?	
ខ្ញុំអាយុម្ភៃបួនឆ្នាំ។	kɨŋom qaayu saamsəp chnam.	I am twenty four years old.	







Lesson 2: Introducing Family Members (1)

មេរៀនទី២: ណែនាំសមាជិកគ្រួសារ (១)

Listen to the Whole Conversation 









- សារ៉េត: ជំរាបសួរសុខ។ 
- សុខ: ជំរាបសួរ សារ៉េត។ 
- សារ៉េត: នេះគឺប្អូនស្រីខ្ញុំ ឈ្មោះចាន់ធួ។ 
- ចាន់ធួ: ជំរាបសួរ លោកសុខ ។ 
- សុខ: លោកអញ្ជើញទៅណា ? 
- សារ៉េត: ខ្ញុំនឹងទៅញាំបាយនៅកៀនស្វាយ។ 
- សុខ: ចាន់ធួចង់ទៅទេ ? 
- ចាន់ធួ: បាទ ទៅ។ 





Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
ជំរាបសួរសុខ។	cum riəp suə soq	Hello Sok.	
ជំរាបសួរសារ៉េត។	cum riəp suə Saareet	Hello Saret.	






នេះគឺប្អូនស្រីខ្ញុំ ឈ្មោះចាន់ធ្វូ។	nɨh kɨ pɔun srəy kɨom cməh chanthuu.	This is my younger sister whose name is Chanthou.	
ជំរាបសួរ លោកសុខ ។	cum riəp suə look soq	Hello Mr. Sok.	
លោកអញ្ជើញទៅណា ?	look qañ cəəñ tɨw naa	Where are you going?	
ខ្ញុំនឹងទៅញុំបាយ នៅភ្នំស្វាយ	kɨom nɨŋ t ɨw ñam baay nɨw kiəŋ swaay	I will be going to eat rice at Kien Sway.	
ចាន់ធ្វូចង់ទៅទេ ?	canthuu caŋ tɨw tee	Does Chanthou want to go?	
ចាស ទៅ។	caa tɨw.	Yes, I want to go.	

**Lesson 3: Introducing Family Members (2)**  
មេរៀនទី ៣: ណែនាំសមាជិកគ្រួសារ (២)

Listen to the Whole Conversation 









- សុខ: David នេះជា ឪពុករបស់ខ្ញុំ។ 
- David: ជំរាបសួរ ព្យ។ 
- ព្យសុវណ្ណ: ជំរាបសួរ ក្មួយមកដល់ស្រុកខ្មែរប៉ុន្មានខែហើយ ? 
- David: ខ្ញុំមកដល់ស្រុកខ្មែរមួយខែហើយ។ 
- ព្យសុវណ្ណ: ក្មួយធ្វើអីដែរនៅស្រុកខ្មែរ ? 
- David: ខ្ញុំមករៀនភាសាខ្មែរ នៅសាកលវិទ្យាល័យភ្នំពេញ។ 
- ព្យសុវណ្ណ: អញ្ចឹងបានជានិយាយភាសាខ្មែរបានល្អ។ 
- David: បាទអរគុណ។ 

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
David នេះជា ឪពុករបស់ខ្ញុំ។	David nih ciə qəwpuq robah kɨom.	David, this is my father.	
ជំរាបសួរ ព្យ។	cum riəp suə puu	Hello Uncle.	
ជំរាបសួរ ក្មួយមកដល់ស្រុកខ្មែរ	cum riəp suə kmuəy məq dəl sroq kmae ponmaan kae	Hello, nephew how long have been in Cambodia?	







ប៉ុន្មានខែហើយ ?	haøy ?.		
ខ្ញុំមកដល់ស្រុកខ្មែរ មួយខែហើយ។	kñom mɑq dɑl sroq kmae muøy kae haøy.	I have been in Cambodia for a month.	
កូនធ្វើអីដែរនៅស្រុកខ្មែរ ?	kmuøy twee qøy dae nɔw sroq kmae ?	Nephew, what are you doing in Cambodia?	
ខ្ញុំមករៀនភាសាខ្មែរ នៅសាកលវិទ្យាល័យ ភ្នំពេញ។	kñom mɑq riəɲ piəsaɑ kmae nɔw saakɑl wityiəɲ lay pnum peeñ.	I came to Cambodia to study Khmer at University of Phnom Penh.	
អញ្ចឹងបានជានិយាយ ភាសាខ្មែរបានល្អ។	qañ cəŋ baan ciə ni yiəy piəsaɑ kmae baan lqɑɑ	That is why you speak very good Khmer.	
បាទអរគុណ។	baat qɑɑkun.	Yes, thank you.	

**Lesson 4: Looking for a Friend**  
**មេរៀនទី ៤: រកពួកម៉ាកម្នាក់**

Listen to the Whole Conversation 

- ផល: សូមទោស ផ្ទះលោករីណានៅឯណា ? 
- ណារី: ចាស ផ្ទះទីពីរនៅខាងឆ្វេង។ 
- ផល: សូមអរគុណ។ 
- ណារី: លោកស្គាល់ រីណានៅពេលណា ? 
- ផល: ខ្ញុំស្គាល់លោករីណានៅពេលរៀននៅប្រទេសបារាំង។ 
- ណារី: លោករីណាជាប្អូនជីដូនមួយរបស់ខ្ញុំ។ 
- ផល: ខ្ញុំអាចជូនលោកទៅបាន។ 
- ផល: បាទ អរគុណច្រើន។ 

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
សូមទោស ផ្ទះលោករីណា	soum tooh ptěəh look rii naa nɔw ae naa?	Excuse me, where is Mr Rian's house?	

នៅឯណា ?			
ចាស ផ្ទះទីពីរនៅខាងឆ្វេង។	caa ptěəh tii pii nɛw khaŋ chweɪŋ.	Yes, second house on the left.	
សូមអរគុណ។	soum qaa kun	Thank you.	
លោកស្គាល់ រីណានៅ ពេលណា?	look skǎəl rii naa nɛw peil naa?	When did you know Rina?	
ខ្ញុំស្គាល់លោករីណានៅពេល រៀន នៅប្រទេសបារាំង។	kñom skǎəl look rii naa nɛw prǎteih barɑŋ.	I knew Mr. Rina when I studied in France.	
លោករីណាជាប្អូនជីដូនមួយ របស់ខ្ញុំ។ ខ្ញុំអាចជូនលោក ទៅបាន។	look rii naa ciə pɔun cii doun muəy kñom. kñom qaac cuun look tɛw baan.	Mr. Rina is my cousin. I can take you there.	
បាទ អរគុណច្រើន	baat qaa kun.	Thank you.	

## Useful Words

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
គ្រួសារ	kruəsaɑ	family	
មនុស្ស	mənuh	person/persons	
សូមទោស	soum tooh	excuse me	
ទាំងអស់	těəŋ qɑh	all	
ហើយនិង	haəy nɛŋ	and	
ហើយ	haəy	and	
និង	nɛŋ	and	
ឈ្មោះ	cmǎəh	name	
អញ្ជើញ	qañ-cəəñ	to invite	
ញ៉ាំ	ñam	to eat	
បាយ	baay	cooked rice	
ញ៉ាំបាយ	ñam-baay	to eat rice	

មកដល់	məq dɔl	to arrive	
មក	məq	to come	
ខែ	kae	month	
រៀន	riən	to study	
ភាសា	piəsaa	language	
សាកលវិទ្យាល័យ	saa-kəl-wityiə-lay	university	
និយាយ	ni-yiəy	to speak	
ផ្ទះ	ptěəh	house	
ឆ្វេង	chweinj	left	
ស្គាល់	skɔəl.	to know	
ប៉ុន្មាន	ponmaan	how many; how much	
ឪពុក	qəwpuk	father	
ម្តាយ	mɔaay	mother	
បងស្រី	baŋsrəy	older sister	
បងប្រុស	baŋproh	older brother	
ប្អូនស្រី	pqounsrəy	younger sister	
ប្អូនប្រុស	pqounproh	younger brother	
អាយុ	qaayu	age	
ឆ្នាំ	chnam	year	
សមាជិក	samaacɩk	member	
ណែនាំ	naenǎəm	to introduce	
ក្មួយ	kmuəy	niece or nephwe	
ស្រុក	sroq	country; district	
ប្រទេស	prətɛih	country	
បារាំង	baraŋ	France	
ប្អូនជីដូនមួយ	pqoun cii doun muəy	cousin	

# Grammar

## I. Grammar Word ( naa) ណា

- Word (naa) as Interrogative Pronoun (where) ណា.
- Word (naa) as Interrogative Adjective (which place) ណា.
- Word (naa) as Definit Pronoun (somewhere or anywhere) ណា.
- Word (naa) as Definit Adjective (some place, any place) ណា.
- Word (naa) as compound with muay (one) and klah (some) ណា

## II. Word Study

- Verb (to know) ស្គាល់
- Verb (to know) ចេះ

## I. Grammar Word ( naa) ណា

● ណា (naa) is used as interrogative pronoun:

Example:

លោក មក ពី ណា ?		<i>Where</i> have you been ?
លោក ទៅ ណា ?		<i>Where</i> are you going ?

● ណា (naa) is used as interrogative adjective:

Example :





លោក ស្នាក់នៅ កន្លែង ណា ?		<i>Which place</i> do you stay ?
លោក ទៅ កន្លែង ណា ?		<i>Which place</i> are you going to ?
លោក មកពី ប្រទេស ណា ?		<i>Which country</i> are you from ?

ណា (naa) is used as indefinite pronoun translated either 'somewhere, anywhere or wherever':

Example 1:





លោកស្រី ទៅ ណា ទេ ?	 Are you going <i>somewhere or anywhere</i> ?
ខ្ញុំ មិន ទៅ ណា ទេ។	 I am not going <i>anywhere</i> .

Example 2:

លោកស្រី ចង់ ទៅ ណា ទេ ?	 Do you want to go <i>somewhere or anywhere</i> ?
ខ្ញុំ មិន ចង់ ទៅ ណា ទេ។	 I don't want to go <i>anywhere</i> .
លោក ចង់ ទៅ ណា ក៏ បានដែរ។	 You can go <i>anywhere or wherever</i> (you wish).
បើលោកស្រី ចង់ ទៅ ណា ខ្ញុំ អាច ជូន ទៅ បាន។	 If you want to go <i>somewhere or anywhere</i> I will take you. Or: <i>Wherever</i> you want to go, I will take you.



Similarly, ណា (naa) is used as indefinite adjective translated either 'some, any or whichever':

Example:

លោកស្រី ចង់ ទៅ កន្លែង ណា ?	 Do you want to go <i>some or any place</i> ?
ខ្ញុំ មិន ចង់ ទៅ កន្លែង ណា ទេ។	 I don't want to go to <i>any place</i> .
លោក ចង់ ទៅ កន្លែង ណា ក៏ បាន ដែរ។	 You can go <i>any palce</i> (anywhere) you wish.
បើ លោក ចង់ ទៅ ផ្សារ ណា ខ្ញុំ ជូនទៅ។	 If you want to go to any market I will take you. Or: Whatever / whichever market you want to go, I will take you.

Naa also occur with the elements *muay* (one) and *klah* (some) as compound indefinite pronouns and adjectives:

Example:

បើ លោក ចង់ បាន អាវ ណា មួយ ប្រាប់ ខ្ញុំ មក ។	 if you want <i>(any shirt)</i> , just tell me.
លោក ចង់ ទៅ កន្លែង ណា ខ្លះ។	 <i>Wherever</i> you would like to go, I will take you.

**II. Word Study**




● កិរិយាស័ព្ទ ស្គាល់ ( To Know a person, place or thing)

The verb (ស្គាល់) here is use to express, be acquainted with person, to know and to know of.

Question					
Subject	+	ស្គាល់	+	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● person</li> <li>● place</li> <li>● thing</li> </ul>	ទេ ? ឬទេ ?

Answer	Response Female	Response Male
Positive	ចាស ស្គាល់ 	បាទ ស្គាល់ 
Negative	អត់ទេ  / អត់ ស្គាល់ ទេ 	

**Example:**

សូមទោស លោក ស្គាល់ គ្រូភាសាខ្មែរ ទេ ?	 Excuse me, do you know Khemr teacher?
សូមទោស លោក ស្គាល់ ភ្នំពេញ ទេ ?	 Excuse me, do you know Where Phnom Penh is?
សូមទោស លោក ស្គាល់ ផ្ទះលោក សារ៉េត ទេ ?	 Excuse me, do you know Saret's house.

● កិរិយាស័ព្ទ ចេះ (to know how to do something )

The verb (ចេះ) here is use to express the ability of knowing to do things).

Question
----------



Subject

+

ចេះ

+

do something




+

ទេ ?

ឬទេ ?

Answer	Response Female	Response Male
Positive	បាទ ចេះ 	បាទ ចេះ 
Negative	អត់ទេ 	អត់ ចេះ ទេ 

Example:


លោក ចេះ និយាយ ភាសា ខ្មែរ ទេ ?		Do you know how to speak Khmre or Do you speak Khmer?.
អ្នក ចេះ ច្រៀង ទេ ?		Do you know how to sing?
អ្នកចេះ លេងភ្លេង ខ្មែរ ទេ ?		Do you know how to play khmer music?

PRONUNCIATION

1. Word មនុស្ស	4. Word សមាជិក
2. Word គ្រួសារ	5. Word ប៉ុន្មាន
3. Word ធ្វើអី or ធ្វើអី or ធ្វើអ្វី	

1. Word មនុស្ស (Person or People) 




The word មនុស្ស is pronounced in IPA (mənuh) . The sub-consonant ɲ is remain silent.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
មនុស្ស	មនោះ 	mənuh

2. Word គ្រួសារ 

The word គ្រួសារ is pronounced in IPA (kruəsaɑ) . The consonant រ is remain silent.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
គ្រួសារ	គ្រួសា 	kruəsaɑ

3. Word ធ្វើអី  or ធ្វើអី  or ធ្វើអ្វី 

The word ធ្វើអី in the conversation is pronounced in IPA (twee qəy) and it is the sort form of words ធ្វើអ្វី (twee qwəy). In spoken form the sub-consonant ( ្រ ) is always dropped.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
ធ្វើអី	ធ្វើអី or ធ្វើអី or ធ្វើអ្វី	twee qəy


4. Word សមាជិក 

The word គ្រួសារ is pronounced in IPA (kruəsaɑ) . The consonant រ is remain silent.

The word សមាជិក is pronounced in IPA (samaacɨk). The vowel ( ិ ) is pronounced as vowel ( ី ) for this word.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
សមាជិក	សមាជីក 	samaacɨk

5. Word ប៉ុន្មាន 

The word ប៉ុន្មាន is pronounced in IPA (ponmaan). The cluster consonant ( ន ) and sub-consonant ( ្រ ) is a medial cluster. In spoken form the first syllable ( ប៉ុន ) is changed to ( ប៉ា ) .

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	Spoken	IPA
ប៉ុន្មាន	ប៉ុនម៉ាន 	ប៉ាម៉ាន 	ponmaan

# Unit 3

## Lesson 1: On the Street to the Market

### មេរៀនទី ១: នៅតាមផ្លូវទៅផ្សារ

Listen to the Whole Conversation 

ធី: រីណាទៅណាហ្នឹង ?



រីណា: ខ្ញុំទៅផ្សារ។ ធីចង់ទៅជាមួយខ្ញុំទេ ?



ធី: ម៉ោងប៉ុន្មានហើយ ?



រីណា: ម៉ោង ៨ ហើយ។



ធី: ខ្ញុំចង់ទៅដែរ តែខ្ញុំមិនអាចទៅបានទេ ខ្ញុំត្រូវទៅធ្វើការ។  
អរគុណ។
















រីណា: ខ្ញុំលាសិនហើយ។ ជួបគ្នាថ្ងៃក្រោយ។









Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
រីណា ទៅណាហ្នឹង ?	riinaa tɔw naa nɛŋ ?	Ryna, where are you going?	
ខ្ញុំ ទៅផ្សារ។ ធី ចង់ទៅជាមួយខ្ញុំទេ ?	kñom tɔw psaa thii caŋ tɔw ciəmuəy kñom tee ?	I am on my way to the market. Thii wants to go with me?	
ម៉ោងប៉ុន្មានហើយ ?	maoŋ ponmaan haəy?	What time is it?	
ម៉ោង ៨ ហើយ។	maoŋ prambəy haəy.	It is eight a clock.	
ខ្ញុំចង់ទៅដែរ តែ ខ្ញុំមិនអាចទៅបានទេ។ ខ្ញុំត្រូវទៅធ្វើការ។ អរគុណ។	kñom caŋ tɔw dae tae kñom min qaac tɔw baan tee kñom trew tɔw twəə kaa. qaa kun	I want to go too, but I have to go to work. Thank you.	
ខ្ញុំលាសិនហើយ។ ជួបគ្នាថ្ងៃក្រោយ។	kñom liəsən haəy cuəp kniə tɔjaj kraoy.	Bye bye. See you some other days.	

មេរៀនទី ២: នៅផ្សារ

Listen to the Whole Conversation 












- អ្នកលក់: លោកត្រូវការអី ? 
- វិណា: មីងមានលក់ស្ករទេ ? 
- អ្នកលក់: ចាសមាន។ លោកត្រូវការប៉ុន្មានគីឡូ ? 
- វិណា: ១ គីឡូថ្លៃប៉ុន្មាន ? 
- អ្នកលក់: ១ គីឡូថ្លៃ ២.៥០០ រៀល។ 
- វិណា: ថ្លៃណាស់ ២.០០០ បានទេ? 
- អ្នកលក់: ២.២០០។ 
- វិណា: អោយខ្ញុំមួយគីឡូ។ 
- អ្នកលក់: ត្រូវការអីទៀតទេ ? 
- វិណា: មានទឹកស្អុយទេ ? 
- អ្នកលក់: មាន យកប៉ុន្មានដប ? 
- វិណា: កន្លះឡូ។ គិតលុយទៅ។ 
- អ្នកលក់: សូមចាំមួយភ្លែត។ 




Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
លោកត្រូវការអី ?	look trəw kaa qəy?	What do you need?	
មីងមានលក់ស្ករទេ ?	miing miəŋ luəq skaa tee ?	Do you sell sugar?	
ចាសមាន។ លោកត្រូវការប៉ុន្មានគីឡូ?	caa miəŋ. look trəwkkaa ponmaan kilou?	Yes, I have. How many kilos do you need?	
១ គីឡូថ្លៃប៉ុន្មាន ?	muəy kilou tlay ponmaan?	How much is a kilo?	
១ គីឡូថ្លៃ ២.៥០០ រៀល	muəy kilou tlay pii pǎn pram rəy riəl.	One kilo costs 2,500 riels.	
ថ្លៃណាស់ ២.០០០ បានទេ?	tlay nah. pii pǎn baan tee?	It is too expensive. Is 2,000 okey?	
២.២០០	pii pǎn pii rəy.	2,200.	
អោយខ្ញុំមួយគីឡូ។	qaoy kñom muəy kilou.	Give me a kilo.	










ត្រូវការអីទៀតទេ ?	trəw kaa qəy tiət tee.	Anything else?	
មានទឹកស្អុយទេ ?	miən tik sot tee?	Do you have drinking water?	
មាន យកប៉ុន្មានដប?	miən. yɔk ponmaan daap?	How many bottles do you want?	
កន្លះឡូ។ គិតលុយទៅ។	muəy lou. kɪt luy tɨw.	Half a dozen. Go ahead and calculate the total.	
សូមចាំមួយភ្លែត។	soum cam muəy plæet.	Please wait a second.	

**Lesson 3: At a Store (1)**  
មេរៀនទី ៣: នៅតូបលក់អីវ៉ាន់ (១)

Listen to the Whole Conversation 











- អ្នកលក់: លោកត្រូវការអី ? 
- វិណា: សូមទោសបង រូបគំនូរនេះថ្លៃប៉ុន្មាន ? 
- អ្នកលក់: ៦.៥០០ រៀល ? 
- វិណា: ថ្លៃណាស់ ចុះថ្លៃបន្តិចបានទេ ? 
- អ្នកលក់: ៦.០០០ រៀល។ 
- វិណា: វានៅតែថ្លៃ ៥.៥០០រៀល បានទេ? 
- អ្នកលក់: មិនបានទេ។ 
- វិណា: បានខ្ញុំយក។ 
- អ្នកលក់: ត្រូវការអីទៀតទេ ? 
- វិណា: អត់ទេ។ 
- អ្នកលក់: សូមចាំមួយភ្លែត។ 

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
លោកត្រូវការអី ?	look trəw kaa qəy?	What do you need, sir?	
សូមទោសបង រូបគំនូរនេះថ្លៃប៉ុន្មាន ?	soum tooh ban ruup kum nuu nih tlay ponmaan ?	Excuse me, how much is this painting?	

៦.៥០០ រៀល។	pram muəy pǎən pram rəy riəl.	6,500	
ថ្លៃណាស់ ចុះថ្លៃបន្តិចបាន ទេ ?	tlay nah coh tlay bontec baan tee?	It is expensive, can you lower the price.	
៦.០០០ រៀល	pram muəy pǎən riəl.	6,000	
វានៅតែថ្លៃ ៥.៥០០រៀល បានទេ?	wiə naw tae tlay, pram pǎən pram rəy baan tee.	It is still too expensive. How about 5,500?	
មិនបានទេ។	min baan tee.	No.	
បានខ្ញុំយក។	baan kǎom yək.	Yes, I get one.	
ត្រូវការអីទៀតទេ ?	trəw kaa qəy tiət tee.	Anything else?	
អត់ទេ។	qət tee.	No.	
សូមចាំមួយភ្លែត។	soum cam muəy plæet.	Please wait a minute.	

**Lesson 4: At a Store (2)**  
មេរៀនទី ៤: នៅតូបលក់អីវ៉ាន់ (២)

**Listen to the Whole Conversation** 

- អ្នកលក់: លោកត្រូវការអី? 
- អ្នកទិញ: រូបថតលាក់នេះល្អណាស់ មួយថ្លៃប៉ុន្មាន ? 
- អ្នកលក់: ៩.០០០ រៀល? 
- អ្នកទិញ: ថ្លៃណាស់ ចុះថ្លៃបន្តិចបានទេ បើទិញច្រើន ? 
- អ្នកលក់: លោកចង់បានប៉ុន្មាន ? 
- អ្នកទិញ: ៣ រូប។ 
- អ្នកលក់: ខ្ញុំចុះអោយ ១០ ភាគរយ។ 
- អ្នកទិញ: វានៅតែថ្លៃ ១៥ ភាគរយ បានទេ? 
- អ្នកលក់: ចាសយកចុះ។ អរគុណច្រើន។ ថ្ងៃក្រោយមកជួយទិញទៀត។ 
- អ្នកទិញ: បាទ។ 

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
លោកត្រូវការអី ?	look trəw kaa qəy?	What do you need?	
រូបចំលាក់នេះល្អណាស់ មួយថ្លៃប៉ុន្មាន ?	ruupcom laaq nih lqaa nah muəy tlay ponmaan ?	This sculture is very nice. How much is a statue?	
៩.០០០ រៀល?	pram buən pǎən riəl.	9,000	
ថ្លៃណាស់ ចុះថ្លៃបន្តិចបានទេ បើទិញច្រើន ?	tlay nah coh tlay bən tec baan tee baə tiñ craən ?	Too expensive, can you lower the price if I buy lots of them?	
លោកចង់បានប៉ុន្មាន ?	look caŋ baan ponmaan?	How many do you want?	
៣០ រូប។	saamsəp.	30 sculptures.	
ខ្ញុំចុះអោយ ១០ ភាគរយ។	kñom coh dəp piəq rəy.	I will offer 10 % discount.	
វានៅតែថ្លៃ ១៥ ភាគរយ បានទេ?	wiə nɔw tae tlay. dəp pram piəq rəy baan tee?	It is still expensive. What about 15% off?	
ចាសយកចុះ។ អរគុណច្រើន។ ថ្ងៃក្រោយមកជួយទិញទៀត។	caah yək coh. qaakun craən. tɔy kraoy mək cuəy tiñ tɔt.	Yes, thank you very much. Please come again next time.	
បាទ។	baat	yes.	

## Useful Words

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
ទៅ	tɔw	to go	
ចង់	caŋ	to want	
អាច	qaac	can	
ធ្វើការ	twəə kaa	to work	
ជាមួយ	ciəmuəy	with	
មាន	miən	to have	
ត្រូវការ	trəw kaa	to need	

លក់	luəq	to sell	
ស្ករ	skaa	sugar	
ថ្លៃ	tlay	to be expensive	
ថ្លៃណាស់	tlay nah	to be very expensive	
យក	yook	to take	
គិត	kit	to think	
លុយ	luy	money	
គិតលុយ	kit luy	to bill	
ទឹក	tik	water	
ទឹកស្អុយ	tik-sot	pure water	
រូបគំនូរ	ruup-kum-nuu	painting	
រូបចំលាក់	ruup-com-laaq	sculpture	
ចាំ	cam	to wait	
ល្អ	lqaa	good	
ទិញ	tiin	to buy	
ច្រើន	craən.	many/much	
អោយ	qaoy	to give	
ផ្សារ	psaa	market	
ម៉ោង	maoŋ	time, hour	
ថ្ងៃក្រោយ	tŋay kraoy	other day	
គីឡូ	kilou	kilogram	
ដប	daap	bottle	
មួយភ្លែត	muəy plɛɛt	one moment	
ចុះថ្លៃ	coh tlay	to lower the price	
បន្តិច	bən tec	a little bit	
តូបលក់អីវ៉ាន់	toup-luəq-qəywan	store or shop	



# Grammar

## I. Word (qəy) or (qəy)




1. Word (qəy) as Interrogative Pronoun (អ្វី) (What).
2. Word (qəy) as Interrogative Adjective អ្វី (What).
3. Word (qəy) as Indefinit Pronoun (អ្វី) (something or anything or whatever).
4. Word (qəy) as Indefinit Adjective (អ្វី) (some, any).
5. Word (qəy) as compound with muəy (one) and klah (some) (អ្វី) and it is used as indefinite pronouns.
6. Word (qəy) as compound with muəy (one) and klah (some) (អ្វី) and it is used as indefinite Adjective.

## II. Word (ponmaan) ប៉ុន្មាន in Interogative sentences

1. ប៉ុន្មាន Ponmaan as Numveral (how many)
2. ប៉ុន្មាន Ponmaan as Pronoun (how much)
3. ប៉ុន្មាន Ponmaan as Adjective (how many)

## I. Grammar Word អ្វី (qəy) or អ្វី (qəy)

1. Word (qəy) as Interrogative Pronoun (អ្វី) (What).





Question	Answer
លោក ទិញ អ្វី ? 	ខ្ញុំ ទិញ សៀវភៅ។ 
What do you buy ?	I buy book.
អ្នក លក់ អ្វី ? 	ខ្ញុំ លក់ ខោអាវ។ 
What do you sell ?	I sell clothing.

2. Word អ្វី (qəy) as Interrogative Adjective.





Question	Answer
----------	--------

លោក ទិញ សៀវភៅ អ្វី ?		ខ្ញុំ ទិញ សៀវភៅ សរសេរ។	
Which book are you buying ?		I buy notebook.	
អ្នក លក់ ខោអាវ អ្វី ?		ខ្ញុំ លក់ ខោអាវ បុរស។	
What clothing are you selling ?		I sell man clothes.	



3. Word អ្វី (qay) as Indefinit Pronoun (something or anything or whatever).

Statement		English	
គាត់ ទៅ ទិញ អ្វី នៅ ផ្សារ។		He go to buy something at the market.	
ខ្ញុំ លក់ អ្វី នៅ ផ្សារ។		I sell something at the market.	
ខ្ញុំ មិន ចង់ ញ៉ាំ អ្វី ទេ។		I don't want to eat anything.	
បើ លោក ចង់ បាន អ្វី ខ្ញុំ ទិញ អោយ។		If you want anything I will buy it for you. or whatever you want I will buy it for you.	

4. Word (qay) as Indefinit Adjective (អ្វី) (some, any)

Question		Answer	
អ្នក ចង់ ទិញ ខោអាវ អ្វី ទេ ?		ខ្ញុំ មិន ចង់ ទិញ ខោអាវ អ្វី ទេ។	
Do you want to buy any clothes?		I don't want to buy any clothes.	
បើ លោក ចង់ បាន ខោអាវ អ្វី ខ្ញុំ ទិញ អោយ។		លោក ទិញ ខោអាវ អ្វី អោយ ខ្ញុំ ក៏បាន ដែរ។	
If you want any clothes I will buy it for you.		You can buy any clothes for me	

5. Word (qay) as compound with muay (one) and klah (some) (អ្វី) and it is used as indefinite pronouns.

Statement		English
បើ អ្នក ចង់ ទិញ អ្វីខ្លះ ប្រាប់មក ខ្ញុំ អាច ទិញ អោយ បាន។		If you want me to buy something, just let me know, I will buy it for you.
បើ អ្នក ចង់ ពិសារ អ្វីមួយ ប្រាប់មក ខ្ញុំ ទិញ អោយ។		If you want to eat anything just let me know I will buy it for you.

6. Word (qəy) as compound with **muəy** (one) and **klah** (some) (អ្វី) and it is used as indefinite Adjective.

Statement	English
បើ អ្នក ចង់ ទិញ សៀវភៅ អ្វីមួយ ពី ស្រុក អាមេរិក ប្រាប់មក ខ្ញុំ អាច ទិញ អោយ បាន។	If you want me to buy any books from America, just let me know, I will buy it for you.

## II. Word (ponmaan) ប៉ុន្មាន in Interogative Sentences 20

The word ប៉ុន្មាន function like a numeral in numeral noun phrase. In the answers to question involving ប៉ុន្មាន, it replaced by a numeral. As example below:

### 1. Ponmaan as Numveral (how much or how many)

Question	Answer
លោក ត្រូវការ ស្ករ ប៉ុន្មាន គីឡូ ?	ខ្ញុំ ត្រូវការ ស្ករ ២ គីឡូ។
How many kilo do you want?	I want 2 kilo.
អ្នក ទិញ ទឹកសុទ្ធ ប៉ុន្មាន ដប ?	ខ្ញុំ ទិញ ទឹកសុទ្ធ ១២ ដប។
How many bottle of pure water do you want to buy?	I buy pure water 12 bottles.
ម៉ោង ប៉ុន្មាន ហើយ ?	ម៉ោង ៨ ហើយ។
What time is it now?	It is 8 O'clock.
គាត់ ត្រូវការ ប៉ុន្មាន គីឡូ ?	គាត់ ត្រូវការ ៦ គីឡូ ?
How many kilos does he want?	He want 6 kilos
រូបគំនូរ នេះ ថ្លៃ ប៉ុន្មាន ?	រូបគំនូរ នេះ ថ្លៃ ១៨ ដុល្លារ។
How much is this painting?	It is 18 dollars.

### 2. Ponmaan as Pronoun (how much)

Question	Answer
លោក ត្រូវការ ប៉ុន្មាន ?	ខ្ញុំ ត្រូវការ ២០ ។
How much do you need?	I need 22.
លោក ចង់បាន ប៉ុន្មាន ?	គាត់ ចង់បាន ១៥ ?
How much do yo want.	I want 15.

### 3. Ponmaan as Adjective (how many)

Question	Answer
ពួកគេ មាន ប្រាក់ ប៉ុន្មាន ? How much money do they have?	ពួកគេ មាន ប្រាក់ ៥០០ រៀល។ They have 500 riels.

### PRONUNCIATION

- |                |       |
|----------------|-------|
| 1. <u>Word</u> | ចង់   |
| 2. <u>Word</u> | ម៉ោង  |
| 3. <u>Word</u> | ផ្សារ |
| 4. <u>Word</u> | សួរ   |



#### 1. Word ចង់ (to want)

The diacritic bantaq ( ̣ ) occurs on the top of the final consonant of a syllable and it is used to shorten the vowel of that syllable. All Khmer consonant, there is an inherent vowel. The inherent vowel for the first series consonant is /aa/ and second series consonant is /oo/. In a syllable with invisible vowel, bantaq is used to shorten the inherent vowel. The inherent vowel /aa/ changes to /a/ after the first series consonant and the inherent vowel /oo/ changes to /u/ or /oo/ after the second series consonant. The syllable ( ចង់ ), first series consonant ( ច ) has an inherent vowel /aa/, therefore the pronunciation of this syllable is (caɑŋ). When diacritic bantaq ( ̣ ) is used on the top of the final consonant ( ង់ ) the inherent vowel changes from to /aa/ to /a/ which cause the pronunciation of syllable (caɑŋ) to (caŋ).

Word Without Diacritic			Word With Diacritic		
ចង់	caɑŋ	to tie	ចង់	caŋ	to want
គាត់ ចង់ គោ			នាង ចង់ ទៅ ផ្សារ		
He ties a cow.			She want to go to the market.		

#### 2. Word ម៉ោង


The diacritic mousekatoan ( ̣ ) on the consonant ( ម ) convert the second series consonant ( ម ) to first series consonant ( ម̣ ).

Word Without Diacritic				Word With Diacritic			
មោង	moŋ	big stick		ម៉ោង	maoŋ	hour or time or o'clock	
លោក យក មោង នោះ ទៅណា ?				ឥឡូវនេះ ម៉ោង ៥ ល្ងាច			
Where do you bring that stick to?				Now It is 5 O'clock in the afternoon			

### 3. Word ផ្សារ (market)

The word ផ្សារ is pronounced in IPA (psaa) . The consonant រ̣ is remain silent.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
ផ្សារ	ផ្សា	psaa 

 If the word is written with no consonant ( រ̣ ) the meaning of the word is different. It means heart or pain, but the pronunciation of the two words remain the same.

### 4. Word ស្ករ (sugar)

The word ស្ករ is pronounced in IPA (skaa). The consonant ( រ̣ ) is remained silent.








Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
ស្ករ	ស្ក	skaa









# Unit 4

## Lesson 1: Asking Nationality

# មេរៀនទី ១: សួរសញ្ជាតិ

## Listen to the Whole Conversation










- ប្អូន: ជំរាបសួរ 
- ផល: បាទ ជំរាបសួរ 
- ប្អូន: សូមទោស លោកជនជាតិអី ? 
- ផល: ខ្ញុំជាជនជាតិអាមេរិក។ ចុះលោក? 
- ប្អូន: ខ្ញុំជាជនជាតិបារាំង។ ខ្ញុំសូមណែនាំអោយស្គាល់  
នេះពួកម៉ាកខ្ញុំ តូនី។ គាត់ក៏ជនជាតិបារាំងដែរ។ 
- តូនី: ជំរាបសួរ រីករាយណាស់ដែលបានស្គាល់លោក។ 
- ផល: ខ្ញុំក៏អញ្ចឹងដែរ។ 

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
ជំរាបសួរ	cum riəp suə	Hello	
បាទជំរាបសួរ	baat cum riəp suə	Yes, Hello	
សូមទោស លោកជនជាតិ អី ?	soum tooh look cŭənciət qəy ?	Excuse me, what is your nationality?	
ខ្ញុំជាជនជាតិ អាមេរិក។ ចុះលោក?	kŭom ciə cŭənciət qaa meeriq. coh look ?	I am American. And you?	
ខ្ញុំជាជនជាតិ បារាំង។ នេះពួកម៉ាកខ្ញុំតូនី។ គាត់ ក៏ជាជនជាតិបារាំងដែរ។	kŭom ciə cŭənciət baaraŋ. nih puəqmaaŋ kŭom tounii. kŏət kaa ciə cŭənciət baaraŋdae.	I am French. This is a friend of mine Tony. He is also French.	
ជំរាបសួរ រីករាយណាស់ ដែលបានស្គាល់លោក។	cum riəp suə riiq-riəy nah dael baan skŏəl look	I am glad to know you.	
ខ្ញុំក៏អញ្ចឹងដែរ។	kŭom kaa qaŋ-cəŋ dae.	So am I.	



## Lesson 2: Meeting a Friend

### មេរៀនទី ២: ជួបពួកម៉ាក

Listen to the Whole Conversation 











- ចន: សុខឯងមកលេងស្រុកខ្មែរដែរ។ 
- សុខ: បាទ តែខ្ញុំនៅមិនបានយូរទេលើកនេះ។ 
- ចន: សុខបានទៅលេងនៅកន្លែងណាខ្លះហើយ។ 
- សុខ: ខ្ញុំមិនទាន់បានទៅលេងឯណាទេតាំងពីមកដល់  
តែខ្ញុំចង់ទៅលេងអង្គរវត្ត។ 
- ចន: សុខទៅថ្ងៃណា ? បើទៅប្រាប់ខ្ញុំផង ព្រោះខ្ញុំចង់ទៅដែរ។ 
- សុខ: ខ្ញុំនឹងទៅថ្ងៃអាទិត្យ។ ខ្ញុំមិនដឹងចង់ជិះទូកឬយន្តហោះទេ។ 
- ចន: ខ្ញុំលឺគេថាជិះទូកសប្បាយជាងជិះយន្តហោះ  
ព្រោះយើងអាចឃើញទេសភាពច្រើននៅតាមទន្លេនិងបឹង។ 
- សុខ: អញ្ចឹង ចាំខ្ញុំប្រាប់នៅពេលខ្ញុំទៅ។ 
- ចន: អរគុណ។ កុំភ្លេចណា។ 






Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
សុខឯងមកលេងស្រុកខ្មែរ ដែរ។	sok qaenj mɔək leej srok khmae dae.	Sok, you also came to visit Cambodia.	
បាទ តែខ្ញុំនៅមិនបានយូរទេលើកនេះ។	baat tae kñom nɛw mɛn baan yuu tae ləək nɛh.	Of course, but I cannot stay for long this time.	
សុខបានទៅលេងនៅកន្លែងណាខ្លះហើយ ?	sok baan tɛw leej nɛw kanlaej naa klah haɔy.	What are the places that Sok have been visiting?	
ខ្ញុំមិនទាន់បានទៅលេងឯណាទេតាំងពីមកដល់ តែខ្ញុំចង់ទៅលេងអង្គរវត្ត។	kñom mɛn tɔ̀ən baan tɛw leej qae naa tee taŋ pii mɔək dal tae kñom caŋ tɛw leej qaŋkɔw-wɔ̀ət.	I have not yet visited any place since I got here; but I want to visit Angkor Wat.	
សុខទៅថ្ងៃណា ? បើទៅប្រាប់ខ្ញុំផងព្រោះខ្ញុំចង់ទៅដែរ។	sok tɛw tɕaj naa? baɔ tɛw prap kñom phaɔŋ prɔ̀əh kñom caŋ dae.	What day does John want to go? If you go, don't forget to tell me.	
ខ្ញុំនឹងទៅថ្ងៃអាទិត្យ។ ខ្ញុំមិនដឹងចង់ជិះទូកឬយន្តហោះទេ។	kñom nɛŋ tɛw tɕaj qaatɛt. kñom mɛn dəŋ caŋ cih tuuk rɛ yɔ̀ən hah tee.	I will go on Sunday. I don't know if I want to take the boat or fly.	
ខ្ញុំលឺគេថាជិះទូកសប្បាយជាងជិះយន្តហោះ ព្រោះយើងអាចឃើញទេសភាព	kñom lɛ kee thaa ci h tuuk spbaay ciəŋ ci h yɔ̀ən hah prɔ̀əh yəəŋ qaac kəəŋ teehsəphiəp craəŋ nɛw taam tonlee nɛŋ bəŋ.	I heard other people said that taking the boat is more interesting than flying because we can see more scenery along the river and the lake.	

ច្រើននៅតាមទន្លេនិងបឹង។			
អញ្ចឹងចាំខ្ញុំប្រាប់នៅពេលខ្ញុំទៅ។	qañcəŋ cam kñom prap nɛw peel kñom tɛw.	So, I will let you know as to when I will go.	
អរគុណ។ កុំភ្លេចណា។	qaa-kun. kom plɛc naa.	Thank you. Don't forget.	






**Lesson 3: Taking a Friend Out**  
មេរៀនទី ៣: នាំពួកម៉ាកទៅខាងក្រៅ

Listen to the Whole Conversation 

- គីម            អាឡូ ខ្ញុំចង់និយាយជាមួយលោកសុខបានទេ? 
- សុខ            អាឡូ ជំរាបសួរ ខ្ញុំសុខនិយាយ អ្នកណាហ្នឹង! 
- គីម            ជំរាបសួរ ខ្ញុំគីម។ 
- សុខ            អូរ គីមមកដល់ស្រុកខ្មែរពីថ្ងៃណា? 
- គីម            បានពីម្សិលមិញ។ ឥឡូវនេះខ្ញុំស្នាក់នៅសណ្ឋាគារអាស៊ី។ 
- សុខ            ថ្ងៃនេះគីមឯងទំនេរទេ? 
- គីម            ថ្ងៃនេះមិនទំនេរទេ។ ស្លែកល្ងាចទើបខ្ញុំទំនេរ។ 
- សុខ            បើអញ្ចឹង ខ្ញុំនឹងទៅជួបគីមនៅម៉ោងប្រាំកន្លះ 
- ហើយយើងទៅញាំបាយជាមួយគ្នា។ 
- គីម            ខ្ញុំចាំនៅជាន់ក្រោមកន្លែងទទួលភ្ញៀវ។ 

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
អាឡូ ខ្ញុំចង់និយាយជាមួយលោកសុខបានទេ?	qaalou kñom caŋ niyɔy ciə-muəy look sok baan tee?	Hello, could I talk to Mr. Sok?	
អាឡូ ជំរាបសួរ ខ្ញុំសុខនិយាយ អ្នកណាហ្នឹង!	qaalou cumriəp-suə kñom sok niyɔy nĕək-naa nəŋ!	Greetings, I am Sok speaking. Who is that!	
ជំរាបសួរ ខ្ញុំគីម។	cumriəp-suə kñom kəm.	Greetings, I am kəm.	
អូរ គីមមកដល់ស្រុកខ្មែរពីថ្ងៃណា?	qou kəm məək dal srok khæe pii tɲay naa?	Oh! kim what day did you get to Cambodia?.	












បានពីម្សិលមិញ។ ឥឡូវនេះខ្ញុំស្នាក់នៅសណ្ឋាគារអាស៊ី។	baat pii msəl mǎñ. qəyləw-nh kñom snaq-nəw sɑnthaakia qasii.	Yesterday. Now I am staying at Asie Hotel.	
ថ្ងៃនេះគឺមឯងទំនេរទេ ?	tɿjaj nɛh kəm qaerj tumnee tee?	kəm, are you free today?	
ថ្ងៃនេះមិនទំនេរទេ។ ស្តែកល្ងាចទើបខ្ញុំទំនេរ។	tɿjaj nɛh mɛn tumnee tee. sqaek lɿjɔc təəp kñom tumnee.	I am not free today. I will be free tomorrow evening.	
បើអញ្ចឹង ខ្ញុំនឹងទៅជួបតីមនៅម៉ោងប្រាំកន្លះ ហើយយើងទៅញាំបាយជាមួយគ្នា។	baə qañcəŋ kñom nɛŋ tɛw cuəp kəm nəw maəŋ pram- kanlah haəy yəəŋ tɛw ñam baay ciəmuəy kniə.	So, I will meet you at 5:30 and we will go to dinner together.	
ខ្ញុំចាំនៅជាន់ក្រោមកន្លែងទទួលភ្ញៀវ។	kñom cam nəw cəən kroam kanlaerj tətuəl pñiəw.	I will be waiting for you at the lobby.	

Lesson 4: Meeting an Acquaintance

មេរៀនទី៤: ជួបអ្នកស្គាល់

Listen to the Whole Conversation 

- តីម សួរស្តីនាងកញ្ញា។ 
- ចាន់ធួ សួរស្តីលោក។ 
- តីម នាងនៅចាំខ្ញុំទេ ? ខ្ញុំធ្លាប់ជួបនាងម្តងនៅឯសាកលវិទ្យាល័យភ្នំពេញ។ 
- ចាន់ធួ ខ្ញុំនឹកឃើញហើយ លោកជាសាស្ត្រាចារ្យនៅសាលាច្បាប់។ 
- តីម ត្រូវហើយ។ នាងមកនេះមានការអ្វីដែរ ? 
- ចាន់ធួ ខ្ញុំមកនេះដើម្បីជួបលោកសាស្ត្រាចារ្យជ័យ ចាប។ 
- តីម ខ្ញុំក៏ត្រូវការជួបគាត់ដែរ។ 
- ចាន់ធួ គាត់អញ្ជើញមកហើយ។ លោកជួបគាត់មុនចុះ ព្រោះខ្ញុំមិនសូវប្រញាប់។ 
- តីម អរគុណច្រើននាង។ 

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
សួរស្តីនាងកញ្ញា។	suə sdey niəŋ kaaña!	Hello Miss.	
សួរស្តីលោក។	suə sdey look!	Hello Sir.	
នាងនៅចាំខ្ញុំទេ ? ខ្ញុំធ្លាប់ជួបនាងម្តងនៅឯ សាកលវិទ្យាល័យភ្នំពេញ។	niəŋ nɛw cam kñom tee? kñom thəɔp cuəp niəŋ kʰəɔdaŋ nɛw qae sakol-vɪtɰiəlay pnuum-pɛŋ.	Do you remember me? I used to meet you once at University of Phnom Penh.	
ខ្ញុំនឹកឃើញហើយ លោកជាសាស្ត្រាចារ្យនៅ សាលាច្បាប់។	kñom nɛk khəəŋ haəy. look ciə sahstraacaa nɛw salaa-cbap.	I remember that. You are a professor at the Law School.	
ត្រូវហើយ។ នាងមកនេះមានការអ្វីដែរ ?	trəw haəy. niəŋ mək nɛh miən kaa qwəy dae?	That's correct. What are you here for?	
ខ្ញុំមកនេះដើម្បីជួបលោក សាស្ត្រាចារ្យជ័យ ចាប។	kñom mək nɛh daəmbəy cuəp look sahstraacaa cɛy caap.	I came here to see Professor cɛy caap.	
ខ្ញុំក៏ត្រូវការជួបគាត់ដែរ។	kñom kaa trəw kaa cuəp kɔət dae.	I also need to see him.	
គាត់អញ្ជើញមកហើយ។ លោកជួបគាត់មុនចុះ ព្រោះខ្ញុំមិនសូវប្រញាប់។	kɔət qañocəəŋ mək haəy. Look cuəp kɔət mun coh pruəh kñom mɛn sɛw prañap.	He is coming. Sir, you meet him first because I am not in a hurry.	
អរគុណច្រើននាង។	qaa-kun craən.	Thank you a lot Miss.	

## Useful Words

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
កន្លែង	kanlaeŋ	place	
គ្រូបង្រៀន	kruu bəŋ-riən	teacher	
គ្រូពេទ្យ	kruu pɛət	medical practitioner	
ធូប	chəw	midwife	

ជនជាតិ	cŭn-ciat	nationality	
ជប៉ុន	co-pon	Japan	
ជាងភ្លើង	ciəŋ-pləəŋ	electrical engineer	
ជាន់	cōn	floor	
ជាន់ក្រោម	cōn kroam	first floor	
និយាយ	niyəy	to speak	
ទំនេរ	tumnee	free	
នាងកញ្ញា	niəŋ kaanña	Miss	
នៅចាំ	nɨw cam	still remember or to wait for	
ណែនាំ	nae-nōm	to introduce	
និសិត្យ	nii-sit	college student	
នឹកឃើញ	nɨk khəon	to remember or to recall	
នៅឯ	nɨw qae	at	
បាន	baan	that's ok.	
បារាំង	baaraŋ	France	
ប្រញាប់	prañap	to be in a hurry	
ពេទ្យធ្មេញ	pɛɛt-thmeeñ	dentist	
ពួកម៉ាក	puəqmaaŋ	friend	
មកដល់	məok dal	to arrive at	
មិនសូវ	mɨn sɨw	not very	
ម្តង	mōdɔaŋ	one time or once	
ម្សិលមិញ	msəl mɨñ	yesterday	
រីករាយ	riiq-riəy	to be happy	
លេខាធិការ	lee-khaa-thi-kaa	secretary	
លេង	leəŋ	to play	
សណ្ឋាគារ	saanthaakio	hotel	
សាកលវិទ្យាល័យ	sakol-vɨtɨyɔlay	university	

សាលាច្បាប់	salaa-cbap	law school	
សាស្ត្រាចារ្យ	sahstraacaa	professor	
វេជ្ជបណ្ឌិត	wee-cěəq-bon-dit	Medical doctor	
សូមទោស	soum tooh	excuse me	
សួរ	សួរ	to ask	
ស្គាល់	sköəl	know	
ស្នាក់នៅ	snaq-nəw	to stay	
អញ្ចឹង	qañ-cəŋ	so	
អាមេរិក	qaa-meeriq	America	
អូស្ត្រាលី	qou-straa-lii	Australia	
អ្នកបើកឡាន	něəq-baək-laan	driver	
អ្នកកាសែត	něəq-kaa-saet	journalist	
ឥឡូវនេះ	qəyləw-nəh	Now	

## Grammar4

### I. Present Tense

#### 1. Affirmative Sentence

- a. Simple Sentence with Intransitive Verb
- b. Simple Sentence with Intransitive Verb and Adverb
- c. Simple Sentence with Transitive Verb and Follow by Object

#### 2. Negative Sentence

#### 3. Interogative Sentence

### II. Present Tense: Sentence with Connecting Verb ( ជំរា ) + (Noun)

#### 1. Affirmative Sentence

#### 2. Negative Sentence

#### 3. Interogative Sentence

#### 4. Note on Connecting Verb

### I. Present Tense:





#### 1. Affirmative Sentence

Unlike English, Khmer verbs do not take inflection in the present tense.

a. Simple Sentence with Intransitive Verb:

Subject + Verb (intransitive)

Example:

គាត់ យំ ។		He cries.
សិស្ស សើច។		Student laughs.
ពួកគេ ដើរ ។		They walk.
ខ្ញុំ ដេក ។		I sleep.

b. Simple Sentence with Intransitive Verb and Adverb:

Subject + Verb + Adverb

Example:

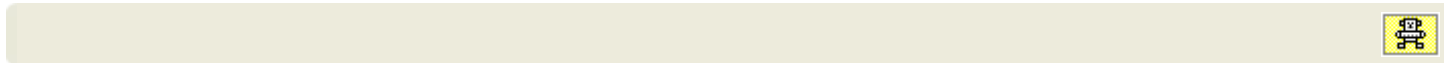
ក្មេងៗ ដើរ តាមដងផ្លូវ។		Children walk on the street.
សំ រស់នៅ ក្នុងទីក្រុង ។		Sam lives in the city

c. Simple Sentence with Transitive Verb and follow by Object:

Subject + Verb + Object



Example:

ខ្ញុំ នៅ នៅ សណ្ឋាគារអាស៊ី ។		I stay in Asie Hotel.
ខ្ញុំ ជួប គាត់ ។		I meet him.
ក្មេងៗ ចូលចិត្ត ផ្លែឈើ ។		Children like fruit.
យើង ស្រឡាញ់ សន្តិភាព ។		We love peace.























2. Negative Sentence

The negative sentence in Khmer is formed by inserting of a negative word ( មិន )  or ( អត់ )

 between the subject and the main verb of a sentence and ( ទេ )  at the end of that sentence. Particle ( ទេ ) can be deleted from the negative sentence, but it doesn't sound natural.

Subject	+	មិន or អត់	+	Verb (intransitive)		+	ទេ	
Subject	+	មិន or អត់	+	Verb	+	Adverb	+	ទេ
Subject	+	មិន or អត់	+	Verb	+	Object	+	ទេ

Example:

គាត់ មិន យំ ទេ។		or	គាត់ អត់ យំ ទេ។	
He doesn't cry.				
សិស្ស មិន សើច ទេ។		or	សិស្ស អត់ សើច ទេ។	
Student doesn't laugh.				
ពួកគេ មិន ដើរ ទេ។		or	ពួកគេ អត់ ដើរ ទេ។	
They don't walk.				
ខ្ញុំ មិន ដេក ទេ។		or	ខ្ញុំ អត់ ដេក ទេ។	
I don't sleep.				
ក្មេងៗ មិន ដើរ តាមដងផ្លូវ ទេ។		or	ក្មេងៗ អត់ ដើរ តាមដងផ្លូវ ទេ។	
Children don't walk on the street.				
សំ មិន រស់នៅ ក្នុងទីក្រុង ទេ។			សំ អត់ រស់នៅ ក្នុងទីក្រុង ទេ។	
Sam doesn't live in the city.				
ខ្ញុំ មិន ស្នាក់នៅ សណ្ឋាគារអាស៊ី ទេ។		or	ខ្ញុំ អត់ ស្នាក់នៅ សណ្ឋាគារអាស៊ី ទេ។	
I don't stay in Asie Hotel.				
ខ្ញុំ មិន ជួប គាត់ ទេ។		or	ខ្ញុំ អត់ ជួប គាត់ ទេ។	
I don't meet him.				
ក្មេងៗ មិន ចូលចិត្ត ផ្លែឈើ ទេ។		or	ក្មេងៗ អត់ ចូលចិត្ត ផ្លែឈើ ទេ។	
Children don't like fruit.				
យើង មិន ស្រឡាញ់ សន្តិភាព ទេ។		or	យើង អត់ ស្រឡាញ់ សន្តិភាព ទេ។	
We don't love peace.				

### 3. Interrogative Sentence:

The question particle (តើ) តើ are always occurs at the beginning of an interrogative clause in formal questions. When the question particle (តើ) តើ is used, it signal the fact that a question follows and the rising and falling intonation of question is not necessary.

Question requiring yes- or-no answer require a final question particle ទេ (tee) ទេ. The full form of particle (tee) is ឬទេ (rH tee) ឬទេ.

តើ	+	Subject	+	Verb (intransitive)	+	ឬទេ ?
តើ	+	Subject	+	Verb	+	Adverb + ឬទេ ?
តើ	+	Subject	+	Verb	+	Object + ឬទេ ?

Example:

តើ គាត់ យំ ឬទេ ?	or	តើ គាត់ យំ ទេ ?
Does he cry?		
តើ សិស្ស សើច ឬទេ ?	or	តើ សិស្ស សើច ទេ ?
Does the student laugh?		
តើ ពួកគេ ដើរ ឬទេ ?	or	តើ ពួកគេ ដើរ ទេ ?
Do they walk?		
តើ ខ្ញុំ ដេក ឬទេ ?	or	តើ ខ្ញុំ ដេក ទេ ?
Do I sleep?		
តើ ក្មេងៗ ដើរ តាមដងផ្លូវ ឬទេ ?	or	តើ ក្មេងៗ ដើរ តាមដងផ្លូវ ទេ ?
Do children walk on the street?		
តើ សំ រស់នៅ ក្នុងទីក្រុង ឬទេ ?	or	តើ សំ រស់នៅ ក្នុងទីក្រុង ទេ ?
Do Sam live in the city?		
តើ លោក ស្នាក់នៅ សណ្ឋាគារអាស៊ី ឬទេ ?	or	តើ លោក ស្នាក់នៅ សណ្ឋាគារអាស៊ី ទេ ?
Do you stay in Asie Hotel?		
តើ លោក ជួប គាត់ ឬទេ ?	or	តើ លោក ជួប គាត់ ទេ ?
Do you meet him?		
តើ ក្មេងៗ ចូលចិត្ត ផ្លែឈើ ឬទេ ?	or	តើ ក្មេងៗ ចូលចិត្ត ផ្លែឈើ ទេ ?
Do children like fruit?		
តើ យើង ស្រឡាញ់ សន្តិភាព ឬទេ ?	or	តើ យើង ស្រឡាញ់ សន្តិភាព ទេ ?
Do we love peace?		








## II. Present Tense with Connecting Verb (ជា) + (Noun),

### 1. Affirmative Sentence with Connecting Verb (ជា) + (Noun):

The meaning of connecting verb (ជា) is (be, is) as in the sentence below:



Subject + Connecting verb (ជា) + Noun

Example:

ខ្ញុំ ជា ជនជាតិ អាមេរិក ។		I am an American
គាត់ ជា សាស្ត្រាចារ្យ ។		He is a professor.
ខ្ញុំ ជា គ្រូបង្រៀន ។		I am a teacher.
ពួកគេ ជា កសិករ ។		They are famers.
អាគារនេះ ជា បណ្ណាល័យ ។		This building is a library







### 2. Negative Sentence with Connecting Verb (ជា) + (Noun)

The negative sentence of simple sentence, with connecting verb (ជា), is form by inserting the negative word (មិនមែន)  or (អត់មែន)  between the subject and the main verb of a sentence and (ទេ) at the end of that sentence. Particle (ទេ) can be deleted from the negative sentence, but it doesn't sound natural.

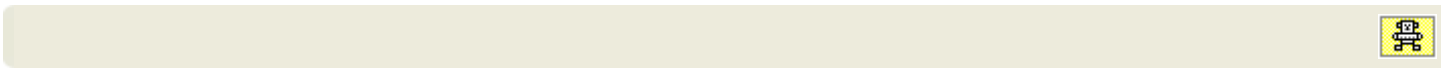
Subject + មិនមែន or អត់មែន + Connecting verb (ជា) + Noun + ទេ

Example:

ខ្ញុំ មិនមែន ជា ជនជាតិ អាមេរិក ទេ។		or	ខ្ញុំ អត់មែន ជា ជនជាតិ អាមេរិក ទេ។	
I am not an American				
គាត់ មិនមែន ជា សាស្ត្រាចារ្យ ទេ។		or	គាត់ អត់មែន ជា សាស្ត្រាចារ្យ ទេ។	
He is not a professor.				



ខ្ញុំ មិនមែន ជា គ្រូបង្រៀន ទេ។	or	ខ្ញុំ អត់មែន ជា គ្រូបង្រៀន ទេ។
I am not a teacher.		
ពួកគេ មិនមែន ជា កសិករ ទេ។	or	ពួកគេ អត់មែន ជា កសិករ ទេ។
They are not famers.		
អាគារនេះ មិនមែន ជា បណ្ណាល័យ ទេ។	or	អាគារនេះ អត់មែន ជា បណ្ណាល័យ ទេ។
This building is not a library		



### 3. Interrogative Sentence with Connecting Verb (ជា) + (Noun)

The interrogative clause, with connecting verb (ជា), is form by adding particle (តើ) at the beginning of the clause and follows by (មែនទេ) at the end of the clause.

តើ + Subject + Connecting verb (ជា) Noun + មែនទេ ?

Example:

តើ លោក ជា ជនជាតិ អាមេរិក មែនទេ ?	Are you an American?
តើ គាត់ ជា សាស្ត្រាចារ្យ មែនទេ ?	Is he a professor?
តើ នាង ជា គ្រូបង្រៀន មែនទេ ?	Is she a teacher?
តើ ពួកគេ ជា កសិករ មែនទេ ?	Are they famers?
តើ អាគារនេះ ជា បណ្ណាល័យ មែនទេ ?	Is this building a library?



### 4. Note on Connecting Verb (ជា)

The connecting verb (ជា) can be dropped in from the affirmative, negative, or interrogative sentence in the spoken form and the sentence still carries the same meaning.

## Occupation


Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
គ្រូបង្រៀន	kruu bəŋ-riən	teacher	
គ្រូពេទ្យ	kruu pɛət	medical practitioner	
ឆ្មប	chəp	midwife	
ជាងភ្លើង	ciəŋ-pləəŋ	electrical engineer	
និសិ្ស	nii-sit	college student	
ពេទ្យធ្មេញ	pɛət-thmeeñ	dentist	
លេខាធិការ	lee-khaa-thi-kaa	secretary	
សាស្ត្រាចារ្យ	sahstraacaa	professor	
វេជ្ជបណ្ឌិត	wee-cəəq-bəŋ-dit	Medical doctor	
អ្នកបើកឡាន	nəəq-baək-laan	driver	
អ្នកកាសែត	nəəq-kaa-saet	journalist	
អ្នកទេសចរណ៍	nəəq-teeh səcəw	Tourist	
ទាហាន	tiə hiən	Soldier	
នរតបាល	nəw kəw baal	Police	
រដ្ឋមន្ត្រី	rəət məŋ trəy	Minister	
សិស្ស	səs	Student	

## PRONUNCIATION

1. <u>Word</u>	សួរ	to ask	8. <u>Word</u>	សី or ឮ	to hear
2. <u>Word</u>	សញ្ជាតិ	nationality	9. <u>Word</u>	នាងកញ្ជា	Miss
3. <u>Word</u>	ក៏អញ្ចឹង	so..	10. <u>Word</u>	ចាំ	to wait
4. <u>Word</u>	កន្លែង	place	11. <u>Word</u>	ទន្លេ	river
5. <u>Word</u>	អង្គរវត្ត	Angkor wat	12. <u>Word</u>	យន្តហោះ	airplane
6. <u>Word</u>	ថ្ងៃអាទិត្យ	Sunday	13. <u>Word</u>	សណ្ឋាគារ	hotel
7. <u>Word</u>	សប្បាយ	happy	14. <u>Word</u>	អញ្ជើញ	to invite

### 1. Word សួរ (to ask)

The word សួរ is pronounced in IPA (suə) . The consonant រ remains silent when it occurs in final position.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
សួរ	សួ	suə 

[Top](#)

### 2. Word សញ្ជាតិ (nationality)

When two consonants are pronounced consecutively within a word, the second consonant is written in a special sub-consonant from below the first consonant. The sub-consonants are called [cəəŋ] of consonant "consonant feet". The form of sub-consonant in most cases a smaller version of consonant, but without the top part of consonant which is called [səq] (hair) of consonant. The combination of consonant and the sub-consonant is called [pcuñ cneəŋ psam] and medial clusters are called (pcuñ cneəŋ pñəw cəəŋ) . The sub-consonants are used as initial clusters and medial clusters. When there is a consonant cluster, (including both an initial consonant and its sub-consonant), the vowel symbols are written around the consonant cluster (either before, above, or after the consonant cluster, and in some cases a combination of these). In all cases, however, the vowel is pronounced *after* the consonant cluster.

In general consonant (ញ) could take sub-consonants (្រ and ្ល) as medial cluster. The word សញ្ជាតិ, consonant ញ takes sub-consonant (្រ) as its medial cluster and the vowel (ិ) on consonant (តិ) is silent.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
សញ្ជាតិ	សាញ់ ជាតិ	sañ ciət 

### 3. Word ក៏អញ្ចឹង (so...)

The diacritic laik qahsdaa ( ័ ) is also called laik prambəy occurs only over the consonants ( ក ) and ( ង ). It does not change the pronunciation of those two consonant. This diacritic is used to distinguish the meaning of word ( ក ) which mean (neck) to auxiliary word ( ក៏ ) which mean (then) or in a combination word ( អញ្ចឹង ) mean (so am I or me too).

In general consonant ( ញ ) could take sub-consonants ( ង ឆ ឈ ញ ) and ( យ ) as medial cluster. The word អញ្ចឹង, consonant ញ takes sub-consonant ( ង ) as its medial cluster.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
ក៏អញ្ចឹង	ក អញ្ច ចឹង	kaa qañ cəŋ 

### 4. Word កន្លែង (place)

Consonant ( ង ) could take sub-consonants ( ង ឆ ឈ ញ ) and ( យ ) as medial cluster. The word កន្លែង, consonant ង takes sub-consonant ( ង ) as its medial cluster. Because the first syllable is pronounced as the first series of consonant, therefore the second syllable have to follow the first series of consonant. In this case the second series consonant ( ង ) which is seen as the sub consonant ( ង ) chang to first series consonant ( ឡើង ).

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
កន្លែង	កន់ ឡើង	kan laeŋ 

### 5. Word អង្គរវត្ត (Angkor wat)

Consonant ( ង ) could take sub-consonants ( ង ឆ ឈ ញ ) and ( យ ) as medial cluster. The word អង្គរ, consonant ( ង ) takes sub-consonant ( ង ) as its medial cluster. The consonant រ remains silent when it occurs in final position. The syllable ( វត្ត ) consonant ( ត ) could take its own sub-consonants ( ង ) but it remains silent when it occurs in final position.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
------------------	---------------	-----

អង្គរវត្ត

អង់ គរ វ៉ាត់

ɑŋ kɑw wɑət



[Top](#)

### 6. Word ថ្ងៃអាទិត្យ (Sunday)

The last syllable (ទិត្យ), consonant (ត) could take sub-consonants (្រ) but it remains silent when it occurs in final position.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
ថ្ងៃអាទិត្យ	ថ្ងៃ អា ទីត	thɨjɑj qaa tət



[Top](#)

### 7. Word សប្បាយ (Angkor wat)

Consonant (ប) could take its own sub-consonants (្រ) as medial cluster.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
សប្បាយ	សាប៍ បាយ	sap baay



[Top](#)

### 8. Word លឺ or ឮ (hear)

The spelling of words "hear" is (លឺ or ឮ). Both of words have the same pronunciation. The the spelling of word (លឺ) composed by consonant (ល) and vowel (ឺ) and the spelling of word (ឮ) is an independent vowel. Both words are used interchangeable, but (លឺ) has been introduced in the 1970s and word (ឮ) is the original of Khmer words. Now, word (ឮ) is brought back to every writing.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	Possible IPA
ឮ	លឺ	lɨ



[Top](#)

### 9. Word នាងកញ្ញា (Miss)

The consonant (ញ) could take sub-consonants (្រ and ្ល) as medial cluster. The word កញ្ញា, consonant ញ takes sub-consonant (្ល) as its medial cluster.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	Possible IPA
នាងកញ្ញា	នាងកញ្ចំ ញ៉ា	kañ ña 

[Top](#)

#### 10. Word ចាំ (to wait or to remember)

The word (ចាំ) has two meanings and its pronunciation is also the same. The first meaning is to wait and the second meaning is to remember.

[Top](#)

#### 11. Word ទន្លេ (river)

Consonant (ន) could take sub-consonants (្រ and ្ល) as medial cluster. The word ទន្លេ, consonant ន takes sub-consonant (្រ) as its medial cluster.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
ទន្លេ	ទន្រ្ត លេ	ʈɔŋ lee 

[Top](#)

#### 12. Word យន្តហោះ (airplane)


The compound word (យន្តហោះ) is a combination of word machine (យន្ត) and fly (ហោះ). The word (យន្ត), consonant (ន) could take sub-consonant (្រ) as medial cluster, but sub-consonant (្រ) remains silent when it occurs in final position of word.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
យន្តហោះ	យន្រ្ត ហោះ	yɔŋ hah 

[Top](#)

#### 13. Word សណ្ឋាគារ (hotel)

The consonant (ណ) could take sub-consonants (្រ and ្ល) as medial cluster. The word សណ្ឋាគារ, consonant ណ takes sub-consonant (្រ) as its medial cluster. The consonant រ remains silent when it occurs in final position.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	Posible IPA
សណ្ឋាគារ	សណ ថា គា	san thaa kiə 

[Top](#)

14. Word អញ្ជើញ (to invite)

The consonant (ញ) could take sub-consonants ( ង and ញ ) as medial cluster. The word អញ្ជើញ, consonant ញ takes sub-consonant ( ង ) as its medial.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	Posible IPA
អញ្ជើញ	អញ ងើញ	qañ cəñ 

# Unit 5

Lesson 2: Cold Day  
មេរៀនទី ២: ថ្ងៃត្រជាក់

Listen to the Whole Conversation 

តារា **D**  
**a** វិណា ក្រោកឡើង។



វិណា: ម៉ោងប៉ុន្មានហើយ ?








តារា ម៉ោងប្រហែល ៩ ហើយ។



វិណា ថ្ងៃនេះយើងទៅណា ?



- តារា យើងនឹងទៅលេងឪពុកយើង បន្ទាប់មកយើងនឹងទៅមើលកុន។ 
- វិណា គំនិតនេះល្អណាស់។ 
- តារា យើងគិតញុំអីសិន។ 
- វិណា ញុំក៏ញុំ។ 
- តារា **D** កុំភ្លេចពាក់អាវដៃវែង ព្រឹកនេះត្រជាក់ណាស់។ 







Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
វិណាក្រោកឡើង។	rina kraok laəŋ	Wake up Rina?	
ម៉ោងប៉ុន្មានហើយ ?	maəŋ ponmaan haəy ?	What time is it?	
ម៉ោងប្រហែល ៩ ហើយ។	maəŋ pra-hael pram-buəŋ haəy ?	It is approximately 9 o'clock.	
ថ្ងៃនេះយើងទៅណា ?	tɕaj nih yəəŋ tɕw naa?	Where are we going to go today?	
យើងនឹងទៅលេងឪពុកយើង បន្ទាប់មកយើងនឹងទៅមើលកុន។	yəəŋ nɕŋ tɕw leəŋ qəw- puq yəəŋ ban-təəp məək yəəŋ tɕw məəl kon.	We are going to visit our father and then we are going to see a movie.	
គំនិតនេះល្អណាស់។	kum-nɕt nih lqaə nah.	It is a very good idea.	
យើងគិតញុំអីសិន។	yəəŋ kɕt ñam qəy sən.	We should eat first.	
ញុំក៏ញុំ។	ñam kaə ñam	Sure.	
កុំភ្លេចពាក់អាវដៃវែង ព្រឹកនេះត្រជាក់ណាស់។	kom pleec pəəq qaaw day waəŋ. Prɕk nih tra-cəəq nah.	Don't forget to wear long sleeve shirt; it is very cold this morning.	

**Lesson 2: Cold Day**  
មេរៀនទី ២: ថ្ងៃត្រជាក់

Listen to the Whole Conversation 

- តារា **D** វិណាក្រោកឡើង។ 
- a**
- វិណា: ម៉ោងប៉ុន្មានហើយ ? 
- តារា ម៉ោងប្រហែល ៩ ហើយ។ 














- វិណា ថ្ងៃនេះយើងទៅណា ? 
- តារា យើងនឹងទៅលេងឪពុកយើង បន្ទាប់មកយើងនឹងទៅមើលកូន។ 
- វិណា គំនិតនេះល្អណាស់។ 
- តារា យើងគិតញ៉ាំអីសិន។ 
- វិណា ញ៉ាំក៏ញ៉ាំ។ 
- តារា **D** កុំភ្លេចពាក់អាវដៃវែង ព្រឹកនេះត្រជាក់ណាស់។ 









Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
វិណាក្រោកឡើង។	rina kraok laəŋ	Wake up Rina?	
ម៉ោងប៉ុន្មានហើយ ?	maoŋ ponmaan haəy ?	What time is it?	
ម៉ោងប្រហែល ៩ ហើយ។	maoŋ pra-hael pram-buəŋ haəy ?	It is approximately 9 o'clock.	
ថ្ងៃនេះយើងទៅណា ?	tɔjaj nih yəəŋ tɛw naa?	Where are we going to go today?	
យើងនឹងទៅលេងឪពុកយើង បន្ទាប់មកយើងនឹងទៅមើលកូន។	yəəŋ nɛŋ tɛw leəŋ qəw- puq yəəŋ ban-təəp məək yəəŋ tɛw məəl kon.	We are going to visit our father and then we are going to see a movie.	
គំនិតនេះល្អណាស់។	kum-nɛt nih lqaə nah.	It is a very good idea.	
យើងគិតញ៉ាំអីសិន។	yəəŋ kit ñam qəy sən.	We should eat first.	
ញ៉ាំក៏ញ៉ាំ។	ñam kaə ñam	Sure.	
កុំភ្លេចពាក់អាវដៃវែង ព្រឹកនេះត្រជាក់ណាស់។	kom pleec pəəq qaaw day waəŋ. Prɛk nih tra-cəəq nah.	Don't forget to wear long sleeve shirt; it is very cold this morning.	

Lesson 3: Rainy Day  
មេរៀនទី ៣: ថ្ងៃភ្លៀង

Listen to the Whole Conversation 

- °សុខៈ ថ្ងៃនេះមានពពកច្រើនណាស់។ 
- ធីៈ អ្នកគិតថាវានឹងភ្លៀងមែនទេ ? 

- សុខ: ខ្ញុំមិនគិតថាវានឹងភ្លៀងទេ។ 
- ធី: ឥឡូវនេះវាជារដូវវស្សា ហើយវាមិនសូវភ្លៀងទេ។ 
- សុខ: ខ្ញុំចង់ទៅមើលកុនថ្ងៃនេះ។ 
- ធី: ប្រសិនបើភ្លៀង ខ្ញុំត្រូវតែនៅផ្ទះ។ 
- សុខ: ខ្ញុំមានអាវភ្លៀងមួយនិងដំត្រមួយ។ អ្នកចង់ប្រើមួយណា ? 
- ធី: ខ្ញុំចង់ប្រើអាវភ្លៀង ។ 
- សុខ: អញ្ចឹងខ្ញុំប្រើដំត្រ។ 
- ធី: យើងទៅមើលកុននៅឯណា ? 
- ធី: នៅក្នុងក្រុង។ គេនិយាយថាកុននេះល្អមើលណាស់។ 

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
ថ្ងៃនេះមានពពកច្រើនណាស់។	tɲaj nih miəŋ pəv-pək cɹəjəŋ nah.	It is very cloudy this morning.	
អ្នកគិតថាវានឹងភ្លៀង មែនទេ ?	nǎəɔk kɪt thaa wiə nɛŋ pliaŋ miəŋ tee?	Do you think it is going to rain?	
ខ្ញុំមិនគិតថាវានឹងភ្លៀងទេ។	kʰom mən kɪt thaa wiə nɛŋ pliaŋ tee.	I don't think it is going to rain.	
ឥឡូវនេះវាជារដូវវស្សា ហើយវាមិនសូវភ្លៀងទេ ។	ɔəy-ləw nih wiə ciə rəv dəw rəv ŋjə tee haəy wiə mən səw miəŋ pliaŋ tee.	Now it is winter; and it rarely rains in the winter.	
ខ្ញុំចង់ទៅមើលកុនថ្ងៃនេះ។	kʰom cəŋ tɛw məəl kon tɲaj nih.	Today, I want to see a movie.	
ប្រសិនបើភ្លៀង ខ្ញុំត្រូវតែ នៅផ្ទះ។	prosrn baə pliaŋ kʰom trəw nɛw ptəəh.	If it rains, I have to stay at home.	
ខ្ញុំមានអាវភ្លៀងមួយនិងដំត្រ មួយ។ អ្នកចង់ប្រើមួយណា ?	kʰom miəŋ qaaw pliaŋ muəy nɛŋ chaat muəy. nǎəɔk cəŋ praə muəy naa?.	I have a raincoat and an umbrella. Which one would you prefer?	
ខ្ញុំចង់ប្រើអាវភ្លៀង ។	kʰom cəŋ praə qaaw pliaŋ.	I want to use the rain coat.	
អញ្ចឹងខ្ញុំប្រើដំត្រ។	qaŋ-cəŋ kʰom praə chaat	Then, I get to use the umbrella.	
យើងទៅមើលកុននៅឯណា ?	yəwŋ tɛw məəl kon nɛw qae naa?	Where are we going to see the movie?	
នៅក្នុងក្រុង។ គេនិយាយថា កុននេះល្អមើល ណាស់។	nɛw knoŋ kroŋ. kee niyɔy thaa kon nih lqaə meel nah.	In town. People say it is a very good movie.	

# Grammar

## A. Future Tense:

1. Affirmative sentence
2. Negative sentence
3. Interrogative sentence

## B. Adverb of Time

## C. Present Tense with Connecting Verb (គឺ) with Adjective

1. Affirmative sentence with Connecting Verb (គឺ)  
Note: Affirmative sentence with Connecting Verb (គឺ)
2. Negative sentence with Connecting Verb (គឺ)  
Note: Negative sentence with Connecting Verb (គឺ)
3. Interrogative sentence with Connecting Verb (គឺ)  
Note: Negative sentence with Connecting Verb (គឺ)

## A. Future Tense:

### 1. Affirmative Sentence

The structure of future tense in Khmer language is similar to English. The auxiliary (នឹង) is used in front of the main verb in a sentence. The structure of the simple future tense is:

Subject + Auxiliary (នឹង) + Main Verb + Object

Example:

Affirmative Sentence

Subject	+	(នឹង)	+	Main Verb	+	Object
យើង		នឹង		ទៅ		មើល កុំន
We		will		go		to see a movies
យើង		នឹង		ទៅ		លេង ឪពុក របស់យើង
We		will		go		to visit his father
ខ្ញុំ		នឹង		រៀន		ភាសាខ្មែរ
I		will		study		Khmer
គាត់		នឹង		មកដល់		ភ្នំពេញ
He		will		arrive		in Phnom Penh
ពួកគេ		នឹង		ចូលចិត្ត		អាហារ ខ្មែរ
They		will		like		Khmer food

## 2. Negative Sentence

For negative sentences in the simple future tense, we insert "មិន" between the auxiliary verb and main verb and particle "ទេ" at the end that sentence.

Subject	+	Auxiliary (នឹង)	+	មិន	+	Main Verb	+	Object	+	ទេ
---------	---	-----------------	---	-----	---	-----------	---	--------	---	----

Example:

Negative Sentence										
Subject	+	(នឹង)	+	not	+	Main Verb	+	Object	+	ទេ
យើង		នឹង		មិន		ទៅ		មើល កុំន		ទេ
We		will		not		go		to see a movies		
យើង		នឹង		មិន		ទៅ		លេង ឪពុក របស់យើង		ទេ
We		will		not		go		to visit his father		
ខ្ញុំ		នឹង		មិន		រៀន		ភាសាខ្មែរ		ទេ
I		will		not		study		Khmer		
គាត់		នឹង		មិន		មកដល់		ភ្នំពេញ		ទេ
He		will		not		arrive		in Phnom Penh		
ពួកគេ		នឹង		មិន		ចូលចិត្ត		អាហារ ខ្មែរ		ទេ
They		will		not		like		Khmer food		

## 3. Interrogative Sentence

For question sentence the simple future tense, we insert "តើ" at the beginning of the sentence and particle "មែនទេ" at the end of sentence.

តើ + Subject + Auxiliary (នឹង) + Main Verb + Object + មែនទេ ?

Example:

Negative Sentence						
តើ	+ Subject	+ (នឹង)	+ Main Verb	+ Object	+ មែនទេ ?	
តើ	យើង	នឹង	ទៅ	មើល ភ្នំ	មែនទេ ?	
will	We		go	to see a movies		
តើ	យើង	នឹង	ទៅ	លេង ឪពុក របស់យើង	មែនទេ ?	
will	We		go	to visit his father		
តើ	នាង	នឹង	រៀន	ភាសាខ្មែរ	មែនទេ ?	
will	I		study	Khmer		
តើ	គាត់	នឹង	មកដល់	ភ្នំពេញ	មែនទេ ?	
will	He		arrive	in Phnom Penh		
តើ	ពួកគេ	នឹង	ចូលចិត្ត	អាហារ ខ្មែរ	មែនទេ ?	
will	They		like	Khmer food		

Note:

The auxiliary verb (នឹង) has the same pronunciation to the conjunction and preposition (នឹង) but the spelling of these two words are different. The vowel (ី) is used for the auxiliary (នឹង) and vowel (ិ) is used for the conjunction and preposition.

### B. Adverb of Time for Future Tense

Adverb of time is very important in Khmer future tense, it provides precise information about future. Adverb of time uses for future includes:

Adverb of Time			
ពេលក្រោយ	Next time	ថ្ងៃក្រោយ	Next time (One day)
ថ្ងៃស្អែក	Tomorrow	ខែក្រោយ	Next month
ថ្ងៃខានស្អែក	The day after tomorrow	ឆ្នាំក្រោយ	Next year

Khmer adverb of time is usually found at the beginning or at the end of the sentence.

Example: Adverb of time is used at the beginning of a sentence.

Affirmative Sentence				
Adverb of Time	+	Subject	+	(នឹង) + Main Verb + Object
ថ្ងៃស្អែក		យើង		នឹង ទៅ មើល កុន
		We		will go to see a movies
ខែក្រោយ		យើង		នឹង ទៅ លេង ឪពុក របស់យើង
		We		will go to visit his father
ឆ្នាំក្រោយ		ខ្ញុំ		នឹង រៀន ភាសាខ្មែរ
		I		will study Khmer
ថ្ងៃខានស្អែក		គាត់		នឹង មកដល់ ភ្នំពេញ
		He		will arrive in Phnom Penh
ថ្ងៃក្រោយ		ពួកគេ		នឹង ចូលចិត្ត អាហារ ខ្មែរ
		They		will like Khmer food

Example: Adverb of time is used at the end of a sentence.

Affirmative Sentence				
Subject	+	(នឹង) + Main Verb + Object	+	Adverb of Time
យើង		នឹង ទៅ មើល កុន		ថ្ងៃស្អែក
We		will go to see a movies		
យើង		នឹង ទៅ លេង ឪពុក របស់យើង		ខែក្រោយ
We		will go to visit his father		
ខ្ញុំ		នឹង រៀន ភាសាខ្មែរ		ឆ្នាំក្រោយ
I		will study Khmer		
គាត់		នឹង មកដល់ ភ្នំពេញ		ថ្ងៃខានស្អែក
He		will arrive in Phnom Penh		
ពួកគេ		នឹង ចូលចិត្ត អាហារ ខ្មែរ		ថ្ងៃក្រោយ
They		will like Khmer food		

### C. Present Tense with Connecting Verb (គឺ) + Adjective

#### 1. Affirmative Sentence with Connecting Verb (គឺ) + (Adjective)

The meaning of connecting verb (គឺ) is (be, is) as in the sentence below:

Subject	+	Connecting verb (គឺ)	+	Adjective	+	Adverb of Degree (Optional)
---------	---	----------------------	---	-----------	---	-----------------------------

Example:

Affirmative Sentence with Connecting Verb (គឺ) + (Adjective)				
Subject	+	(គឺ)	+	Adjective + Adverb of Degree (Optional)
ព្រឹកនេះ		គឺ		ត្រជាក់ ណាស់
This morning		is		cold very
ថ្ងៃនេះ		គឺ		ក្តៅ ណាស់
Today		is		hot very
គាត់		គឺ		ចិត្តល្អ ណាស់
He		is		kind very
នាង		គឺ		ស្អាត ណាស់
She		is		beautiful very
ពួកគេ		គឺ		ឆ្លាត ណាស់
They		are		clever very
ខ្ញុំ		គឺ		ទាប ណាស់
I		am		short very

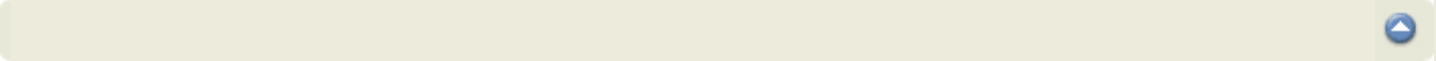
Note:

- ◆ The position of Adverb of Degree (ណាស់) is proceeding after an adjective.
- ◆ The connecting verb (គឺ) is not very important in the sentence, it can be dropped in the affirmative sentence and the sentence still carries the same meaning in both spoken or written form.


Example:

Affirmative Sentence with Connecting Verb (គឺ) + (Adjective)				

Subject ព្រឹកនេះ	+	+	Adjective ត្រជាក់	+ Adverb of Degree (Optional) ណាស់
This morning ថ្ងៃនេះ		is	very cold ក្តៅ	ណាស់
Today គាត់		is	hot ចិត្តល្អ	very ណាស់
He នាង		is	kind ស្អាត	very ណាស់
She ពួកគេ		is	beautiful ឆ្លាត	very ណាស់
They ខ្ញុំ		are	clever ទាប	very ណាស់
I		am	short	very



2. Negative Sentence with Connecting Verb (គឺ)  + (Adjective)

The negative sentence of simple sentence, with connecting verb (គឺ), is form by inserting the negative word (មិន)  after the connecting verb (គឺ) and add particle (ទេ) at the end of that sentence. Particle (ទេ) can be deleted from the negative sentence, but it doesn't sound natural.

**Subject + Connecting verb (គឺ) + មិន + Adjective + ទេ**

Example:

Negative Sentence with Connecting Verb (គឺ) + (Adjective) + ទេ



Subject	+	( គឺ )	+	( មិន )	Adjective	+	Particle ( ទេ )
ព្រឹកនេះ		គឺ		មិន	ត្រជាក់		ទេ
This morning		is		មិន	cold		
ថ្ងៃនេះ		គឺ		មិន	ក្តៅ		ទេ
Today		is			hot		
គាត់		គឺ		មិន	ចិត្តល្អ		ទេ
He		is			kind		
នាង		គឺ		មិន	ស្អាត		ទេ
She		is			beautiful		
ពួកគេ		គឺ		មិន	ឆ្លាត		ទេ
They		are			clever		
ខ្ញុំ		គឺ		មិន	ទាប		ទេ
I		am			short		

Note:

◆ The connecting verb ( គឺ ) is not very important in the negative sentence, it can be dropped and it still carries the same meaning in both spoken or written form.

Example:

Negative Sentence with Connecting Verb ( គឺ ) + ( Adjective ) + ទេ							
Subject	+		( មិន )	Adjective	+	Particle ( ទេ )	
ព្រឹកនេះ			មិន	ត្រជាក់		ទេ	
This morning		is	not	cold			
ថ្ងៃនេះ			មិន	ក្តៅ		ទេ	
Today		is	not	hot			
គាត់			មិន	ចិត្តល្អ		ទេ	
He		is	not	kind			
នាង			មិន	ស្អាត		ទេ	
She		is	not	beautiful			
ពួកគេ			មិន	ឆ្លាត		ទេ	
They		are	not	clever			
ខ្ញុំ			មិន	ទាប		ទេ	
I		am	not	short			



### 3. Interrogative Sentence with Connecting Verb (គឺ) + (Adjective)

The Interrogative clause, with connecting verb (គឺ), is form by adding particle (តើ) at the beginning of the clause and follows by (ឬទេ) at the end of the clause.

តើ + Subject + Connecting verb (គឺ) + Adjective + ឬទេ ?

Example:

Interrogative Sentence with Connecting Verb (គឺ) + (Adjective) + ឬទេ ?								
តើ	+	Subject	+	(គឺ)	+	Adjective	+	Particle (ឬទេ)
តើ	+	ព្រឹកនេះ	+	គឺ	+	ត្រជាក់	+	ឬទេ ?
is		This morning				cold		
តើ	+	ថ្ងៃនេះ	+	គឺ	+	ក្តៅ	+	ឬទេ ?
is		Today				hot		
តើ	+	គាត់	+	គឺ	+	ចិត្តល្អ	+	ឬទេ ?
is		He				kind		
តើ	+	នាង	+	គឺ	+	ស្អាត	+	ឬទេ ?
is		She				beautiful		
តើ	+	ពួកគេ	+	គឺ	+	ឆ្លាត	+	ឬទេ ?
are		They				clever		
តើ	+	ខ្ញុំ	+	គឺ	+	ទាប	+	ឬទេ ?
am		I				short		

Note:

◆ The connecting verb (គឺ) is not very important in the Interrogative sentence, it can be dropped and it still carries the same meaning in both spoken or written form.

Example:

## Interrogative Sentence with Connecting Verb (គឺ) + (Adjective) + ឬទេ ?

គឺ	+	Subject	+	Adjective	+	Particle (ឬទេ)
គឺ		ព្រឹកនេះ		ត្រជាក់		ឬទេ ?
is		This morning		cold		ឬទេ ?
គឺ		ថ្ងៃនេះ		ក្តៅ		ឬទេ ?
is		Today		hot		ឬទេ ?
គឺ		គាត់		ចិត្តល្អ		ឬទេ ?
is		He		kind		ឬទេ ?
គឺ		នាង		ស្អាត		ឬទេ ?
is		She		beautiful		ឬទេ ?
គឺ		ពួកគេ		ឆ្លាត		ឬទេ ?
are		They		clever		ឬទេ ?
គឺ		ខ្ញុំ		ទាប		ឬទេ ?
am		I		short		ឬទេ ?

# PRONUNCIATION

- |                                     |                                       |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Word</u> ចូលចិត្ត to like     | 5. <u>Word</u> ដំត្រី umbrella        |
| 2. <u>Word</u> កសិករ farmer         | 6. <u>Word</u> ត្រជាក់ to be cold     |
| 3. <u>Word</u> ត្រូវការ to need     | 7. <u>Word</u> ពាក់អាវ to wear        |
| 4. <u>Word</u> បន្ទាប់មក after that | 8. <u>Word</u> រដូវរងារ winter season |

### 1. Word ចូលចិត្ត (to like)

The syllable ( ចិត្ត ) consonant ( ត ) could take its own sub-consonants ( ្ក ) but it remains silent when it occurs in final position.

ចូលចិត្ត	ចូល ចិត	coul cət	
----------	---------	----------	--

[Top](#)

## 2. Word កសិករ (farmer)

The word (កសិករ) is from Pali and it has three syllables. The consonant ( រ ) remains silent when it occurs in final position.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA	
កសិករ	កាក់ សិ ក	kak se kɔɔ	

[Top](#)

## 3. Word ត្រូវការ (to need)

The consonant ( រ ) remains silent when it occurs in final position.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA	
ត្រូវការ	ត្រូវ កា	trkəw kaɔ	

[Top](#)

## 4. Word បន្ទាប់មក (place)

Consonant ( ឆ ) could take sub-consonants ( ្រ and ្ល ) as medial cluster. The word បន្ទាប់មក, consonant ឆ takes sub-consonant ( ្រ ) as its medial cluster. Because the first syllable is pronounced as the first series of consonant, therefore the second syllable have to follow the first series of consonant. In this case the second series consonant ( ឆ ) which is seen as the sub-consonant ( ្រ ) is pronounced as the first series consonant.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA	
បន្ទាប់មក	បឆ ទាប់ មក	ban tɔəp mək	

[Top](#)

## 5. Word វត្ត (Angkor wat)

Diacritic Sanyok Sanha ( ្រ ) has the same value as vowel ( - ា ). Consonant ( ត ) could take sub-consonants ( ្រ ) but it remains silent when it occurs in final position.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA	
ឆ័ត្រ	ឆាត់	chat	

[Top](#)

6. Word ត្រជាក់ (to be cold)

Diacritic bantaq ( ' ) occurs on the top of the final consonant of a syllable ( ជាក់ ) to shorten the sound of that syllable. The vowel ( - ្រ ) /aa/ followed by the bantaq will be pronounced shorter /a/ after the first series consonant and /៉ា/ or /៉ោ/ after the second series consonant. Because ( ជ ) is a second series syllable, the vowel ( - ្រ ) /aa/ will be pronounced /៉ោ/.

Word Without Diacritic			Word With Diacritic			
ត្រ ជាក់	tra ciəq	No meaning	ត្រ ជាក់	tra cəəq	to be cold	

[Top](#)

7. Word ពាក់អាវ (to wear)

Diacritic bantaq ( ' ) occurs on the top of the final consonant of a syllable ( ពាក់ ) to shorten the sound of that syllable. The vowel ( - ្រ ) /aa/ followed by the bantaq will be pronounced shorter /a/ after the first series consonant and /៉ា/ or /៉ោ/ after the second series consonant. Because ( ព ) is a second series syllable, the vowel ( - ្រ ) /aa/ will be pronounced /៉ោ/.

Word Without Diacritic			Word With Diacritic			
ពាក់ អាវ	piəq qaaw	No meaning	ពាក់អាវ	pəəq qaaw	to wear	

[Top](#)

8. Word រដូវរងារ (winter season)

All Khmer consonant there is an inherent vowel. The inherent vowel for the first consonant is /aa/ and second consonant is /v/. The word រដូវរងារ has 4 syllables. The consonant ( រ ) at the beginning of syllable ( រដូវ ) and ( រងារ ) could be pronounced with its inherent vowel. Because








consonant ( វ ) is a second series consonant, it take vowel / វ័ / for the pronunciation. The consonant ( វ ) remains silent when it occurs in final position.






Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	Possible IPA
រដ្ឋវរងារ	រ ដ្ឋវ រ ងារ	រ័វ ដ្ឋវ រ័វ ងារ



# Unit 6

## Lesson 1: Occupation មេរៀនទី ១: មុខងារ

Listen to the Whole Conversation 













- ស្ត្រី: ជំរាបសួរ។ 
- យ៉ូស៊ី: ចាស ជំរាបសួរ។ 
- ស្ត្រី: សូមទោស លោកស្រីជនជាតិអី ? 
- យ៉ូស៊ី: ចាស ខ្ញុំជនជាតិជប៉ុន។ ចុះលោក? 
- ស្ត្រី: បាទ ខ្ញុំជាជនជាតិអូស្ត្រាលី។ សូមទោស លោកស្រីធ្វើការអី ? 
- យ៉ូស៊ី: ចាស ខ្ញុំជាគ្រូបង្រៀន។ ចុះលោក ? 
- ស្ត្រី: បាទ ខ្ញុំជាគ្រូពេទ្យ។ 

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
ជំរាបសួរ។	cum riəp suə	Hello.	
ចាស ជំរាបសួរ។	caah cum riəp suə.	Yes, Hello.	
សូមទោស លោកស្រី ជនជាតិអី ?	soum tooh look srəy cǔənciət qəy ?	Excuse me, what is Madame nationality?	
ចាស ខ្ញុំជនជាតិជប៉ុន។	caah kñom cǔənciət cəpon. coh look ?	Yes, I am a Japanese. And you?	

ចុះលោក?			
បាទ ខ្ញុំជាជនជាតិ អូស្ត្រាលី។ សូមទោស លោកស្រីធ្វើការអី ?	kñom ciə cǔənciət qoustralii. soum tooh look srəy twəə-kaa qəy?	Yes, I am an Australian. Excuse me, what do you do for a living?	
ចាស ខ្ញុំជាគ្រូបង្រៀន។ ចុះលោក ?	caah kñom ciə kruu-baŋriən. coh look ?	Yes, I am a teacher. And you?	
បាទ ខ្ញុំជាគ្រូពេទ្យ។	baat kñom ciə kruu-pɛət.	I am a medical doctor.	

**Lesson 2: Occupation 2**  
មេរៀនទី ២: មុខងារ ២

Listen to the Whole Conversation 









- សារ៉េត: នៅស្រុកខ្មែរ លោកធ្វើការអីដែរ? 
- សុខ: បាទខ្ញុំជាអ្នកជំនួញ។ 
- សារ៉េត: លោកធ្វើជំនួញអីដែរ? 
- សុខ: ខ្ញុំជាអ្នកលក់ឡាន។ ខ្ញុំយកឡានពីស្រុកអាមេរិច  
ទៅលក់នៅស្រុកខ្មែរ។ 
- សារ៉េត: មុខជំនួញនេះរកប្រាក់បានច្រើនណាស់មែនទេ?  
បានមិនច្រើនទេ? 
- សុខ: ប៉ុន្តែគ្រាន់បើជាងលក់របស់ផ្សេងទៀត។  
ចុះលោកធ្វើអីដែរនៅអាមេរិច? 
- សារ៉េត: ខ្ញុំជាមេធាវីនៅក្រុមហ៊ុនឯកជន។ 
- សុខ: លោកចូលចិត្តការងារនេះទេ?  
បាទចូលចិត្តខ្លាំងណាស់។ 
- សារ៉េត: ខ្ញុំធ្វើការនេះប្រាំមួយឆ្នាំហើយ។ 
- សុខ: អញ្ចឹងបានជាលោកពូកែនិយាយ។ 
- សារ៉េត: ឥឡូវខ្ញុំលាសិនហើយ ជួបគ្នាថ្ងៃក្រោយ។ 
- សុខ: បាទលាហើយ។ 

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
នៅស្រុកខ្មែរ លោកធ្វើការ អីដែរ?	nəw srok kmae look twəə kaa qəy dae?	What do you do in Cambodia?	
បាទខ្ញុំជាអ្នកជំនួញ។	baat kñom ciə nəəq cumnuəñ.	I am a businessman.	
លោកធ្វើជំនួញអីដែរ?	look twəə cumnuəñ qəy dae ?	What is your business?	
ខ្ញុំជាអ្នកលក់ឡាន។ ខ្ញុំយកឡានពីស្រុកអាមេរិច ទៅលក់នៅស្រុកខ្មែរ។	kñom ciə nəəq luək laan. kñom yəək laan pii srok qaa mee ric tɔw luək nəw srok kmae.	I am a car dealer. I import cars from America to Cambodia.	
មុខជំនួញនេះរកប្រាក់បាន ច្រើនណាស់ មែនទេ?	muk cumnuəñ nih rəək prak baan crəən nah maen tee?	This business earns you a lot of money, isn't it?	
បាទមិនច្រើនប៉ុន្មានទេ។ ប៉ុន្តែ គ្រាន់បើជាងលក់របស់ផ្សេង ទៀត។ ចុះលោកធ្វើអីដែរនៅ អាមេរិចនេះ?	baat mən crəən ponman tee. pontae krəən bəə ciəŋ luək rəəbah pseij tiət. coh look twəə qəy dae nəw qaa mee ric nih?	Not much. But it is better than selling other things. What do you do here in America?	
ខ្ញុំជាមេធាវីនៅក្រុមហ៊ុន ឯកជន។	kñom ciə meethiəwii nəw krom hun qaek kəcun.	I am a lawyer in a private company.	
លោកចូលចិត្តការងារនេះទេ?	look coul cət kaa ɲiə nih tee?	Do you like this job?	
បាទចូលចិត្តខ្លាំងណាស់។ ខ្ញុំធ្វើការនេះប្រាំមួយឆ្នាំហើយ។	baat coul cət klaŋ nah. kñomtwəə kaa nih pram muəy cnam heəy.	Yes, I like it very much. I have been with this job for six years.	
អញ្ចឹងបានជាលោកពូកែនិយាយ។	qañcəŋ baan ciə puu kae niyəy.	That is why you are very good at speaking.	
ឥឡូវខ្ញុំលាសិនហើយ ជួបគ្នាថ្ងៃក្រោយ។	qəy ləw kñom liə sən həəy cuəp kniə tɲay kraoy.	Now I want to say goodbye. See you next time.	
បាទលាហើយ។	baat liə həəy.	Yes, see you.	


Lesson 3: Journalist  
មេរៀនទី ៣: អ្នកកាសែត

Listen to the Whole Conversation 













- សារ៉េត: អ្នកទៅណា ខ្ញុំមិនដែលឃើញ? 
- សុខ: បានខ្ញុំទៅធ្វើការនៅតាមខេត្ត។ យូរៗខ្ញុំមកលេងម្តង។ 
- សារ៉េត: ឥឡូវនេះធ្វើការអីដែរ ? 
- សុខ: ខ្ញុំជាអ្នកកាសែត។  
ខ្ញុំត្រូវធ្វើដំណើរគ្រប់ខេត្តដើម្បីយកព័ត៌មាន។ 
- សារ៉េត: ធ្វើការជាអ្នកកាសែតពិបាកទេ? 
- មិនពិបាកទេ។ ធ្វើការជាអ្នកកាសែតសប្បាយណាស់  
សុខ: ព្រោះបានស្គាល់គ្រប់កន្លែង។ 
- ចុះសារ៉េតធ្វើអីដែរពេលនេះ?  
សារ៉េត: ខ្ញុំជានិស្សិតនៅមហាវិទ្យាល័យបច្ចេកទេស។ 
- សុខ: ពេលរៀនចប់ សារ៉េតចង់ធ្វើអី?  
សារ៉េត: ខ្ញុំចង់ធ្វើជាវិស្វករអគ្គិសនី ព្រោះខ្ញុំចូលចិត្តវាណាស់។ 






Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
អ្នកទៅណាខ្ញុំមិនដែល ឃើញ?	nəʊq tɛw naa kñom mən dael khəʊñ ?	Where have you been? I have never seen you.	
បានខ្ញុំទៅធ្វើការនៅតាម ខេត្ត។ យូរៗខ្ញុំមក លេងម្តង។	baat kñom tɛw twəʊ kaa nɛw taam khaet. yuu yuu mɔʊk-leəŋ mdaŋ.	I have gone to work in various provinces. I visit here once in a while.	
ឥឡូវនេះធ្វើការអីដែរ ?	qəyləw nih twəʊ-kaa qəy dae?	What are you doing now?	
ខ្ញុំជាអ្នកកាសែត។ ខ្ញុំត្រូវធ្វើដំណើរទៅ គ្រប់ខេត្តដើម្បីយកព័ត៌មាន។	kñom ciə nəʊq-kaa- saet kñom trəw twəʊ damnaə tɛw krəp khaet daəmbəy yəʊk pəʊdaamɿən	I am a journalist. I have to travel to every provinces to collect information.	
ធ្វើការជាអ្នកកាសែត ពិបាកទេ?	twəʊ kaa ciə nəʊq kaa saet pibaak tee?	Is job of a journalist difficult.	
មិនពិបាកទេ។ ធ្វើការជាអ្នកកាសែតសប្បាយណាស់ព្រោះបានស្គាល់គ្រប់កន្លែង។ ចុះសារ៉េតធ្វើអីដែរពេល នេះ?	min pibaak tee. twəʊ kaa ciə nəʊq kaa saet sabaay nah pruh baan skəʊl krup kanlɛŋ. coh saret twəʊ qəy dae peel nih?	No, not at all. Being a journalist is fun. Because we know every places. And what are you doing now?	
ខ្ញុំជានិស្សិតនៅ មហាវិទ្យាល័យបច្ចេកទេស។	kñom ciə niisət nɛw mɔʊ-haa-wɛtɿyɿləy paccakateeh.	I am a student at the faculty of technology.	

ពេលរៀនចប់ សារ៉េតចង់ធ្វើអី?	peel riəŋ cəp saret cəŋ twee qəy?	What do you want to do when you graduate?	
ខ្ញុំចង់ធ្វើជាវិស្វករ អគ្គិសនី ព្រោះខ្ញុំចូលចិត្ត វាណាស់។	kñom cəŋ twəə ciə wiiswak-kəə qaakisəni pruh kñom coul cət wiə nah.	I want to be a electrical engineer because I like it very much.	

Lesson 4: I am a Tourist  
មេរៀនទី ៤: ខ្ញុំជាអ្នកទេសចរ

Listen to the Whole Conversation 

- កាណិកា: ជំរាបសួរលោក។ 
- ផល: បាទ ជំរាបសួរ។ 
- កាណិកា: សូមទោស លោកជាជនជាតិអី ? 
- ផល: ខ្ញុំជាជនជាតិអាមេរិច។ ចុះលោកស្រី? 
- កាណិកា: ខ្ញុំជាជនជាតិបារាំង។ លោកធ្វើការអីដែរ នៅស្រុកខ្មែរ ? 
- ផល: បាទខ្ញុំជាអ្នកទេសចរ។ ចុះលោកស្រី ? 
- កាណិកា: ខ្ញុំក៏ជាអ្នកទេសចរដែរ។ 
- ផល: លោកស្រីនឹងស្នាក់នៅស្រុកខ្មែរប៉ុន្មានថ្ងៃដែរ? 
- កាណិកា: ចាសខ្ញុំនឹងស្នាក់នៅមួយអាទិត្យ។ ចុះលោក? 
- ផល: បាទខ្ញុំនឹងត្រឡប់ទៅស្រុកអាមេរិចនៅថ្ងៃសុក្រនេះ។ 

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
ជំរាបសួរលោក។	cum riəp suə.	Hello sir.	
បាទ ជំរាបសួរ។	baat cum riəp suə.	Hello.	
សូមទោស លោកជនជាតិអី?	soum tooh look cŭənciət qəy ?	excuse me, what is your nationality ?	
ខ្ញុំជាជនជាតិអាមេរិច។	kñom ciə cŭənciət qaa meeric. coh looksrəy ?	I am an American. And Madame?	

ចុះលោកស្រី?			
ខ្ញុំជាជនជាតិបារាំង។ លោកធ្វើការអីដែរនៅស្រុកខ្មែរ?	kñom ciə cǔənciət baaraŋ. look twəə kaa qəy nɿw srok kmae ?	I am French. What do you do in Cambodia?	
បាទខ្ញុំជាអ្នកទេសចរ។ ចុះលោកស្រី ?	baat kñom ciə teehsacaa. coh looksəy.	Yes, I am a tourist. And Madame?	
ខ្ញុំក៏ជាអ្នកទេសចរដែរ។	kñom kaa ciə nəəq teehsacaa dae.	I am also a tourist.	
លោកស្រីនឹងស្នាក់នៅស្រុកខ្មែរ ប៉ុន្មានថ្ងៃដែរ?	looksəy nɿŋ snaq nɿw ponman tɿjaj dae?	How many days are you going to stay in Cambodia?	
ចាសខ្ញុំនឹងស្នាក់នៅមួយអាទិត្យ។ ចុះលោក?	cah kñom nɿŋ snaq nɿw muəy qaatt. coh look?	Yes, I am going to stay for a week. And you?	
បាទខ្ញុំនឹងត្រឡប់ទៅស្រុកអាមេរិច នៅថ្ងៃសុក្រនេះ។	baat kñom nɿŋ trolap tɿw srok qaameeric nɿw tɿjaj sok nɿh.	Yes I will go back to America this Friday.	

## Useful Words

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
កន្លែង	kanlɛŋ	place	
ខេត្ត	khaet	province	
គ្រាន់បើជាង	krəən bəə ciəŋ	better than	
គ្រូបង្រៀន	kruu-baŋriən	teacher	
គ្រូពេទ្យ	kruu-pɛɛt	doctor	
ជនជាតិ	cǔənciət qəy	nationality	
ជប៉ុន	cəpon	Japanese	
ទេសចរ	teehsacaa	tourist	
និស្សិត	niisət	college student	
ធ្វើការ	twəə-kaa	to work	

ធ្វើដំណើរ	twəə damnaə	to travel	
បច្ចេកទេស	paccaekateeh	technology	
បារាំង	baaraŋ	French	
ប៉ុន្តែ	pontae	but	
ផ្សេងទៀត	pseij tiət	other	
ព័ត៌មាន	pǎədaamɨən	information	
ពិបាក	pibaak	difficult	
មកលេង	mɔək leeŋ	to visit	
មុខជំនួញ	muk cumnuən	business	
រកប្រាក់	rɔək prak	to earn money	
របស់	rɔəbɔh	things	
លោកស្រី	look srəy	Madame	
វិស្វករ	wiiswak-kɔə	engineer	
វិស្វករអគ្គិសនី	wiiswak-kɔə qaakisənii	electrical engineer	
សប្បាយ	sabaay	happy	
អាទិត្យ	qaatɨt	week	
អាមេរិច	qaameeric	American	
អ្វី	qəy	what	
អូស្ត្រាលី	qoustralii	Australian	
អ្នកកាសែត	nǎəq-kaa- saet	journalist	
អ្នកជំនួញ	nǎəq cumnuən	businessman	
អ្នកលក់ឡាន	nǎəq luək laan	car dealer	
ឥឡូវ	qəyləw	now	

## Grammar

**Present Tense: Sentence with Connecting Verb ( ជំរា ) + (Noun)**

1. **Affirmative Sentence**
2. **Negative Sentence**
3. **Interogative Sentence**
4. **Note on Connecting Verb**






**I. Present Tense with Connecting Verb ( ជំរា ) + (Noun),**

**1. Affirmative Sentence with Connecting Verb ( ជំរា )  + (Noun):**

The meaning of connecting verb ( ជំរា ) is (be, is) as in the sentence below:



**Subject + Connecting verb ( ជំរា ) + Noun**

Example:

ខ្ញុំ ជា ជនជាតិ អាមេរិក ។		I am an American
គាត់ ជា សាស្ត្រាចារ្យ ។		He is a professor.
ខ្ញុំ ជា គ្រូបង្រៀន ។		I am a teacher.
ពួកគេ ជា កសិករ ។		They are famers.
អាគារនេះ ជា បណ្ណាល័យ ។		This building is a library













**2. Negative Sentence with Connecting Verb ( ជំរា )  + (Noun)**

The negative sentence of simple sentence, with connecting verb ( ជំរា ), is form by inserting the negative word ( មិនមែន )  or ( អត់មែន )  between the subject and the main verb of a sentence and ( ទេ ) at the end of that sentence. Particle ( ទេ ) can be deleted from the negative sentence, but it doesn't sound natural.

**Subject + មិនមែន or អត់មែន + Connecting verb ( ជំរា ) + Noun + ទេ**

Example:

ខ្ញុំ មិនមែន ជា ជនជាតិ អាមេរិក ទេ។		or	ខ្ញុំ អត់មែន ជា ជនជាតិ អាមេរិក ទេ។	
I am not an American				
គាត់ មិនមែន ជា សាស្ត្រាចារ្យ ទេ។		or	គាត់ អត់មែន ជា សាស្ត្រាចារ្យ ទេ។	
He is not a professor.				
ខ្ញុំ មិនមែន ជា គ្រូបង្រៀន ទេ។		or	ខ្ញុំ អត់មែន ជា គ្រូបង្រៀន ទេ។	
I am not a teacher.				
ពួកគេ មិនមែន ជា កសិករ ទេ។		or	ពួកគេ អត់មែន ជា កសិករ ទេ។	
They are not famers.				
អាគារនេះ មិនមែន ជា បណ្ណាល័យ ទេ។		or	អាគារនេះ អត់មែន ជា បណ្ណាល័យ ទេ។	
This building is not a library				








### 3. Interogative Sentence with Connecting Verb (ជា) + (Noun)

The interogative clause, with connecting verb (ជា), is form by adding particle (តើ) at the beginning of the clause and follows by (មែនទេ) at the end of the clause.

តើ + Subject + Connecting verb (ជា)      Noun      + មែនទេ ?

Example:

តើ លោក ជា ជនជាតិ អាមេរិក មែនទេ ?		Are you an American?
តើ គាត់ ជា សាស្ត្រាចារ្យ មែនទេ ?		Is he a professor?
តើ នាង ជា គ្រូបង្រៀន មែនទេ ?		Is she a teacher?
តើ ពួកគេ ជា កសិករ មែនទេ ?		Are they famers?
តើ អាគារនេះ ជា បណ្ណាល័យ មែនទេ ?		Is this building a library?



### 4. Note on Connecting Verb (ជា)

The connecting verb (ជំរា) can be dropped in from the affirmative, negative, or interrogative sentence in the spoken form and the sentence still carries the same meaning

# PRONUNCIATION

1. <u>Word</u>	ជនជាតិ	nationality	7. <u>Word</u>	ក្រុមហ៊ុន	Company
2. <u>Word</u>	បង្រៀន	to teach	8. <u>Word</u>	ប៉ុន្តែ	but
3. <u>Word</u>	គ្រូពេទ្យ	medical doctor	9. <u>Word</u>	ឯកជន	private
4. <u>Word</u>	យូរៗ	Once in a while	10. <u>Word</u>	ព័ត៌មាន	information
5. <u>Word</u>	វិស្វករ	engineer	11. <u>Word</u>	ខេត្ត	province
6. <u>Word</u>	អគ្គិសនី	electricity	12. <u>Word</u>	បច្ចេកទេស	technology

## 1. Word ជនជាតិ (nationality)

All Khmer consonant there is an inherent vowel. The inherent vowel for the first consonant is /aa/ and second consonant is /oo/. The syllable (ជាតិ), vowel (ិ) on letter (តិ) is not pronounced.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
ជនជាតិ	ជន' ជាត	cən ciət 

[Top](#)

## 2. Word បង្រៀន (to teach)


Consonant (ង) could take sub-consonants (ង, ង្គ, ង្ឃ, ង្ច, ង្ជ, ង្ញ, ង្ឋ, ង្ឍ, ង្ត, ង្ថ) as medial cluster. The word បង្រៀន, consonant ង takes sub-consonant (ង) as its medial cluster.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
បង្រៀន	បង' រៀន	baŋ riən 

[Top](#)

## 3. Word គ្រូពេទ្យ (medical doctor)

The spelling of ( គ្រូពេទ្យ ), sub-consonant ( ្យ ) remains silent when it occurs in final position.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
គ្រូពេទ្យ	គ្រូ ពេទ	kruu-pɛət. 

[Top](#)

#### 4. Word យូរៗ (Once in a while)

The full or partial reduplication sign Leiktoo ( ៗ ) is used to indicate that the word after which it occurs is to be repeated.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
យូរៗ	យូ យូ	yuu yuu 

[Top](#)

#### 5. Word វិស្វករ (Engineer)

Word ( វិស្វករ ) has three syllables. Consonant ( ស ) could take sub-consonants ( ្វ ) an initial cluster. Since this word is from Sanskrit, it is pronounced as illustrating in the table below.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
វិស្វករ	វិ ស្វាក់ ក	wii swak koo 

[Top](#)

#### 6. Word អគ្គិសនី (electricity)

Word ( អគ្គិសនី ) has three syllables. Consonant ( តិ ) could take sub-consonants ( ្ហ ) as a medial cluster. Since this word is from Sanskrit, it is pronounced as illustrating in the table below.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
អគ្គិសនី	អាក់ តិស នី	qaakisəni 

[Top](#)

#### 7. Word ក្រុមហ៊ុន (company)

Diacritic trəysap ( ្រ ) are used to convert four of the first series consonants ស ហ ឋ and អ which have no second series counterpart to the second series consonant ស្រ ហ្រ ឋ្រ and អ្រ so that the vowel used with this consonant are pronounced with the second series value.



Word Without Diacritic			Word With Diacritic		
ក្រុមហ៊ុន	krom hon	No meaning	ក្រុមហ៊ុន	krom hun	company 

[Top](#)

### 8. Word ប៉ុន្តែ (but)


Diacritic Mousekatoan ( " ) is used to convert six of the second series consonants ង ញ ម យ រ and វ which has no second series counterparts to first series consonants ង ញ ម យ រ and វ .  
Diacritic Mousekatoan ( " ) is used to convert a first series consonant ប to ប៉ and from which ប៉ has the conterpart in the second series ព .

Word Without Diacritic			Word With Diacritic		
ប៉ុន្តែ	bontae	No meaning	ប៉ុន្តែ	pontae	company 

[Top](#)

### 9. Word ឯកជន (private)

Independent vowel ( ង ) is equa to regular vowel ( ៃ ) and it is pronounced ( អៃ )

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	Posible IPA
ឯកជន	អៃក កជន	qaek kəcun 

[Top](#)

### 10. Word ពតិមាន (information)

Diacritic Robaat ( ័ ) is the reflex of an original /r/ in Sanskrit word. In most words, when robaat occurs over a final consonant, both the consonant and the robaat is not pronounced. In some case, the effect of robaat is to chang the vowel to . When the robaat appears over a medial consonant, robaat is pronounced.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	Posible IPA
ពតិមាន	ពតិមាន	pəcədaamjən 

[Top](#)

### 11. Word ខេត្ត (province)

Word (ខេត្ត) has syllable. Consonant (ត) could take its own sub-consonants (្ក) and it remains silent. This word has a different spelling (ខៃត្រ, but pronunciation remains the same.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	Possible IPA
ខេត្ត	ខៃត	khaet 

[Top](#)

## 12. Word បច្ចេកទេស (technology)

Word (បច្ចេកទេស) has four syllables. Consonant (ប) could take sub-consonants (្ក) as medial cluster.







Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	Possible IPA
បច្ចេកទេស	ប៉ាច់ ចៃ កា ទេស	pac cae kateeh 








# Unit 7

Lesson 1: Inquiring for a Friend

មេរៀនទី ១: សួររកពួកម៉ាក

Listen to the Whole Conversation 









- អ្នកបំរើ: លោករកអ្នកណា ? 
- ដារា: លោកសារ៉េតនៅទេ ? 
- អ្នកបំរើ: អត់ទេ គាត់ទៅទីក្រុងហើយ។ 
- ដារា: ពេលណាគាត់មកវិញ ? 
- អ្នកបំរើ: មិនយូរទេ។ សូមលោកចូលអង្គុយលេងសិន។ 
- ដារា: អរគុណ។ 


Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
លោករកអ្នកណា ?	look roak qnaak naa?	Sir, who are you looking for?	
លោកសារ៉េតនៅទេ ?	look saareit n'w tee?	Is Mr. Sareth here?	
អត់ទេ គាត់ទៅក្រុងហើយ។	qaat tee köat t'w krong haoy.	No. He went to the city.	
ពេលណាគាត់មកវិញ?	pəəl naa köat mook viñ.	When will he be back?.	
មិនយូរទេ។ សូមលោកចូល អង្គុយលេងសិន។	miñ yuu tee. Soum look coul qaaŋ kuy leeŋ sen.	It won't be long. Please come in and have a seat.	
អរគុណ។	qaa kun.	Thank you.	







**Lesson 2: Invit a Friend to Eat out**

**មេរៀនទី ២: អញ្ជើញពួកម៉ាកទៅពិសារបាយខាងក្រៅ**

**Listen to the Whole Conversation **









- សារ៉េត: ខ្ញុំសប្បាយចិត្តដោយអ្នកបានមកលេង។ មកដល់យូរហើយ? 
- ដារា: មិនយូរទេ ប្រហែល១៥ នាទី។ 
- សារ៉េត: ពិសារបាយល្ងាចហើយ ឬនៅ? 
- ដារា: នៅទេ ។ 
- សារ៉េត: ខ្ញុំចង់អញ្ជើញអ្នកទៅពិសារបាយនៅភោជនីយដ្ឋាន។ 
- ដារា: ភោជនីយដ្ឋានមួយណា? 
- សារ៉េត: យើងទៅភោជនីយដ្ឋានដារា មានម្ហូបឆ្ងាញ់ៗច្រើន។ 
- ដារា: ទៅក៏ទៅ។ 




Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
ខ្ញុំសប្បាយចិត្តដោយបាន មកលេង។ មកដល់យូរហើយ?	kñom saabay-cit daoy baan mook leeŋ. mook dal yuu haoy?	I am happy that you come to visit. Have you been here for a while?	

មិនយូរទេ ប្រហែល ១៥ នាទី។	mɨn yuu tee prɔhael dɔp pram niətii.	Not too long, around 15 minutes.	
ពិសារបាយល្ងាចហើយ ឬនៅ?	pisaa baay lɔjɔc haəy rɨɨ nɨw?	Have you had your dinner?	
នៅទេ ។	nɨw tee.	Not yet.	
ខ្ញុំចង់អញ្ជើញទៅ ពិសារបាយនៅភោជនីយដ្ឋាន។	kɨm cɔŋ qaŋ-cəŋkɨ tɨw pisaa baay nɨw pɔoc-nii-thaan.	I would like invite you to eat at a restaurant..	
ភោជនីយដ្ឋាន មួយណា?	pɔoc-nii-thaan muəy naa?	Which restaurant?	
យើងទៅភោជនីយដ្ឋាន ដារា មានម្ហូបឆ្ងាញ់ៗច្រើន។	yəŋ tɨw pɔoc-nii-thaan dara miəŋ mhoup tɔŋkɨ tɔŋkɨ craəŋ.	We will go to Dara restaurant. There are many delicious dishes.	
ទៅក៏ទៅ។	tɨw kaa tɨw.	Let's go	

**Lesson 3: At a Restaurant**  
មេរៀនទី ៣: នៅភោជនីយដ្ឋាន

Listen to the Whole Conversation 










- សារ៉េត: មានកន្លែងទំនេរទេ? 
- អ្នកបំរើតុ: ចាស មាន។ លោកមានគ្នាប៉ុន្មាននាក់? 
- សារ៉េត: បាទ មានគ្នាប្រាំនាក់។ 
- អ្នកបំរើតុ: សូមអញ្ជើញមកតាមខ្ញុំ។ លោកត្រូវការពិសារភេសជ្ជៈអី? 
- សារ៉េត: ខ្ញុំត្រូវការស្រាបៀ។ 
- អ្នកបំរើតុ: ចុះលោកខាងនេះ? 
- ដារា: ខ្ញុំត្រូវការតែទឹកកក និងតារាងរាយមុខម្ហូប។ 
- អ្នកបំរើតុ: ចាស សូមចាំបន្តិច។ 



Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
មានកន្លែងទំនេរទេ?	miəŋ kan-laej tum-nee tee ?	Do you any table left?	
ចាស មាន។ លោកមាន	cah miəŋ. look miəŋ kniə ponmann nɔəq?	Yes, we do. How people are there in your group?	


ត្បូងប៉ុន្មាននាក់?			
បាទ មានគ្នាប្រាំនាក់។	baat miəŋ kniə pram nəəŋ.	Yes, there are five of us.	
សូមអញ្ជើញមកតាមខ្ញុំ។ លោកត្រូវការពិសារភេសជ្ជៈអ្វី ?	soum qaŋ-cəəŋ mɔək taam kŋom. look trəw kaa pisaa pheesecəəŋ qəy?	Please, follow me. Do you want anything to drink?	
ខ្ញុំត្រូវការស្រាបៀរ។	kŋom trəw kaa sraa biə.	I need a beer	
ចុះលោកខាងនេះ ?	coh look khaaŋ nih ?	And what about you?	
ខ្ញុំត្រូវការតែទឹកកកនិង តារាងរាយមុខម្ហូប។	kŋom trəw kaa tae tik kaək nɛŋ taaraaŋ riəy muk mhoup.	I need iced tea and a menu.	
ចាស សូមចាំបន្តិច	cah soum cam bəŋ tɛc	Yes, please wait a minute.	

**Lesson 4: Order food**  
មេរៀនទី ៤: ហៅម្ហូប

Listen to the Whole Conversation 








- សារីត: អ្នកហៅម្ហូបទេ? 
- ដារ: អញ្ជឹងក៏បាន។ 
- ដារ: មានការិសាច់មាន់ទេថ្ងៃហ្នឹង ? 
- អ្នកបំរើតុ: ចាស មាន។ 
- ដារ: អញ្ជឹងខ្ញុំចង់បានការិមួយចាន។ 
- អ្នកបំរើតុ: លោកត្រូវការអ្វីទៀតទេ ? 
- ដារ: ខ្ញុំចង់បានត្រីចៀន និងធារស្តៃគ្រប់មុខជាមួយសាច់ជ្រូក។ 
- អ្នកបំរើតុ: លោកចង់បានបាយទេ ? 
- ដារ: បាទ ពីរចានតូចៗបានហើយ។ 



Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
អ្នកហៅម្ហូបទេ?	nəək haw mhoup tɛw ?	Should you order the food?	






អញ្ចឹងក៏បាន។	qañcəŋ kaa baan..	That's all right.	
មានការីសាច់មាន់ទេថ្ងៃហ្នឹង ?	miəŋ karij sac-məŋ dee thŋaj nəŋ?	Do you have chicken curry today?	
ចាស មាន។	cah miəŋ.	Yes, we do.	
អញ្ចឹងខ្ញុំចង់បានការីមួយចាន។	qañcəŋ kñom caŋ baan karij sac- məŋ muəy caan.	Then, I would like to have a bowl of chicken curry.	
លោកត្រូវការអ្វីទៀតទេ?	look trəuv kaa qwəy tiət tee?	Would you like something else?	
ខ្ញុំចង់បានត្រីចៀនមួយចាន និងឆាវស្ពៃគ្រប់មុខជាមួយ សាច់ជ្រូកមួយចាន។	kñom caŋ baan trəy-ciəŋ muəy can niŋ chaa-spəy krup muk ciəmuəy sac-cruuk muəy caan.	I would like to have a plate of fried fish and a plate of mixed vegetable and pork stirred fry.	
លោកចង់បានបាយទេ ?	look caŋ baan baay tee?	Would you like some rice?	
បាទ ពីរចានតូចៗបានហើយ។	pji caan touc-touc baan haəy.	Two small bowls of rice is enough.	

**Lesson 5: Have You Eaten**  
មេរៀនទី ៥: ហូបបាយទេ




Listen to the Whole Conversation 
























- ដារ៉ា: ម៉ោង១១:៣០ ហើយ ហូបបាយទេ? 
- វីណា: ហូបមុនចុះ ខ្ញុំមិនទាន់ឃ្លានទេ។ 
- ដារ៉ា: ថ្ងៃនេះខ្ញុំចង់ទៅហូបនៅខាងក្រៅ។ 
- វីណា: គិតទៅហូបនៅឯណា? 
- ដារ៉ា: ហាងចិនជិតនេះ ខ្ញុំឮគេថាម្ហូបថ្ងៃត្រង់នៅ  
ហាងនោះឆ្ងាញ់ណាស់ ខ្ញុំចង់សាក។ 
- វីណា: ពិតមែនឬ ? អញ្ចឹងខ្ញុំទៅដែរ។ 
- ដារ៉ា: តោះ 

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
ម៉ោង១១:៣០ហើយ	maoŋ dapmuəy huəy houp baay tee?	It is 11:30 already would you like to go and eat?	















ហូបបាយទេ?			
ហូបមុនចុះ ខ្ញុំមិនទាន់ឃ្នានទេ។	houp muncoh kñom mɔntɔɔn kliəɓ tee ?	Go ahead and eat first; I am not yet hungry.	
ថ្ងៃនេះខ្ញុំចង់ទៅហូបនៅខាងក្រៅ។	tɲay nɔh kñom caɲ tɔw houp nɔw khaaɲ kraw.	I would like to eat out today.	
គិតទៅហូបនៅឯណា?	kɪt tɔw houp nɔw qae-naa ?	Where do you have in mind?	
ហាងចិនជិតនេះ ខ្ញុំឮគេថា ម្ហូបថ្ងៃត្រង់នៅហាងនោះ ឆ្ងាញ់ណាស់ ខ្ញុំចង់សាក។	haaɲ-cɪn cɪt nɔh kñom lɛ kee thaa mhoup-tɲay-traɲ nɔw haaɲ nuh cɲaɲ nɔh kñom caɲ saak.	I heard that a Chinese restaurant close to here serves delicious lunch and I want to try.	
ពិតមែនឬ ? អញ្ចឹងខ្ញុំទៅដែរ។	pɪt mɛɛn rɛɛ? qaɲcɔɲ kñom tɔw dae.	Is it true? Then, I also want to go.	
តោះ	tah	Let's go.	

## Useful Words

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	Listening
ការី	karii	curry	
ក្រុង	krong	city	
ខាងក្រៅ	khaaɲ kraw	outside/out (like in "to eat out")	
គ្រប់មុខ	krup muk	mixed	
ឃ្នាន	khliəɓ	to be hungry	
ចង់	caɲ	to want	
ចង់សាក	caɲ saak	to want to try	
ចិន	cɪn	Chinese	
ចូល	coul	enter	
ឆាវ	chaa	stirred fry	

ឆ្ងាញ់	ɕɥan	delicious	
ជិតនេះ	ciɛt nɨh	close to here	
តារាងរាយមុខម្ហូប	taaraaŋ riəy muk mhoup	menu	
តែទឹកកក	tae tɨk kaak	ice tea	
តោះ	taɬ	let's go	
ត្រីចៀន	trəy-ciən	fried fish	
ត្រូវការ	trəw kaa	need	
ថ្ងៃហ្នឹង	thɥay nəŋ	today	
ទំនេរ	tuum nee	vacant (free)	
នាទី	niətii	minute	
ប៉ុន្មាន	ponmann	how many, how much	
បាយ	baay	rice	
បាយល្ងាច	baay lɥiəc	dinner	
ប្រហែល	prəhael	around, may be	
ពិតមែន	pɨt mɛɛn	to be true	
ពិសារ	pisaa	to eat	
ពេលណា	pəɔl naa	When	
ភេសជ្ជៈ	pheesecǎɔq	drink	
ភោជនីយដ្ឋាន	pooc-nii-thaan	restaurant	
មក	məɔk	to come	
មកដល់	məɔk dəl	to arrive at	
មកលេង	məɔk leeŋ	to visit	
មកវិញ	məɔk viŋ	to come back	
មាន់	mǎn	chicken	
ម្ហូបចាន	muəy caan	a bowl	
ម៉ោង	maoŋ	time, hour	
ម្ហូប	mhoup	food (dishes)	



ម្ហូបថ្ងៃត្រង់	mhoup-tɲay-traŋ	food for lunch	
យូរ	yuu	long "time"	
រក	rəək	to look for	
លេង	leɲ	play	
សប្បាយចិត្ត	saabay-cit	to be happy	
ស្រាបៀ	sraa biə	beer	
សាច់	sac	meat	
សាច់ជ្រូក	sac-cruuk	pork	
ស្ពៃ	spɿy	vegetable	
ហាងចិន	haaŋ-cɪn	Chinese Restaurant/ Store	
អង្គុយ	qaaŋkuy	to sit	
អង្គុយលេង	qaaŋkuy leɲ	to stay as a guest at for a while	
អញ្ចឹង	qañcəŋ	that's; so	
អញ្ជើញ	qañ-cəəŋ	to invite	

## Grammar

## The Verb (មិន)

1. Verb (មិន) Occurs after a Subject
  - a. Affirmative Sentence with Verb (មិន)
  - b. Negative Sentence with Verb (មិន)
  - c. Interrogative Sentence with Verb (មិន)
2. Verb (មិន) Occurs without a Subject
  - a. Affirmative Sentence with Verb (មិន)
  - b. Negative Sentence with Verb (មិន)
  - c. Interrogative Sentence with Verb (មិន)
3. Verb (មិន) as a Modal Verb  
Learn this structure in grammar unit 8

## The Verb (មិន)

1. The Verb (មិន) "mɨn" Occurs after a Subject.

When the verb (មិន) occurs after a subject, it can be conveniently translated "to have".

- a. Affirmative Sentence with Verb (មិន)

Subject + មិន + Object

Example:

Affirmative Sentence with Verb (មិន)

Subject	+	(មាន)	+	Object
ខ្ញុំ		មាន		សម្ល ម្លូរ
I		have		sour soup
យើង		មាន		ម្ហូបឆ្ងាញ់ៗ
We		have		delicious food
ខ្ញុំ		មាន		លុយ
I		have		money
គាត់		មាន		ឡាន
He		has		a car
ពួកគេ		មាន		សម្ល ករី
They		have		curry

[Top](#)

b. Negative Sentence with Verb (មាន)

Subject + មិន + មាន + Object + ទេ

Example:

Negative Sentence with Verb (មាន)								
Subject	+	មិន	+	(មាន)	+	Object	+	ទេ ។
ខ្ញុំ		មិន		មាន		សម្ល ម្លូរ		ទេ ។
I		do not		have		sour soup.		
យើង		មិន		មាន		ម្ហូបឆ្ងាញ់ៗ		ទេ ។
We		do not		have		delicious food.		
ខ្ញុំ		មិន		មាន		លុយ		ទេ ។
I		do not		have		money.		
គាត់		មិន		មាន		ឡាន		ទេ ។
He		do not		has		a car.		
ពួកគេ		មិន		មាន		សម្ល ករី		ទេ ។
They		do not		have		curry.		

[Top](#)

c. Interrogative Sentence with Verb (មាន)

តើ + Subject + មាន + Object + ឬទេ ?

Example:

Negative Sentence with Verb ( មាន )						
តើ	+	Subject	+	( មាន )	+ Object	+ ឬទេ ?
តើ		អ្នក		មាន	ស្អុយ ម្ហូប	ឬទេ ?
Do		I		have	sour soup.	
តើ		យើង		មាន	ម្ហូបឆ្ងាញ់ៗ	ឬទេ ?
Do		we		have	delicious food.	
តើ		ខ្ញុំ		មាន	លុយ	ឬទេ ?
Do		I		have	money.	
តើ		គាត់		មាន	ឡាន	ឬទេ ?
Does		he		has	a car.	
តើ		ពួកគេ		មាន	ស្អុយ ករី	ឬទេ ?
Do		they		have	curry.	

[Top](#)

## 2. Verb ( មាន ) Occurs without a Subject

When it occurs without a subject or after a topic " or after demonstrative noun phrase", its meaning is 'there is, there exists'.

### a. Affirmative Sentence with Verb ( មាន )

A topic + មាន + Object

Example:

Affirmative Sentence with Verb ( មាន )

Topic	+ (មាន)	+ Object
យើងទៅភោជនីយដ្ឋានដារា	មាន	ម្ហូបឆ្ងាញ់ៗ
We will go to Dara restaurant	there are	many delicious dishes.
នៅសាលានេះ	មាន	និសិ្សច្រើន។
At this school	there are	many students.
នៅភោជនីយដ្ឋាននេះ	មាន	មនុស្សច្រើន
I	there are	many people.
នៅផ្ទះខ្ញុំ	មាន	ឡាន មួយ
At my house	there is	a car.
នៅហាងនេះ	មាន	សៀវភៅល្អៗច្រើន
At this store	there are	many good books.

[Top](#)

b. Negative Sentence with Verb (មាន)

A topic	+ មិន	+ មាន	+ Object	+ ទេ
---------	-------	-------	----------	------

Example:

Affirmative Sentence with Verb (មាន)				
Topic	+ មិន	+ (មាន)	+ Object	ទេ ។
យើងទៅភោជនីយដ្ឋានដារា	មិន	មាន	ម្ហូបឆ្ងាញ់ៗ	ទេ ។
We will go to Dara restaurant	(not)	there are	many delicious dishes.	
នៅសាលានេះ	មិន	មាន	និសិ្សច្រើន។	ទេ ។
At this school	(not)	there are	many students.	
នៅភោជនីយដ្ឋាននេះ	មិន	មាន	មនុស្សច្រើន	ទេ ។
I	(not)	there are	many people.	
នៅផ្ទះខ្ញុំ	មិន	មាន	ឡាន មួយ	ទេ ។
At my house	(not)	there is	a car.	
នៅហាងនេះ	មិន	មាន	សៀវភៅល្អៗច្រើន	ទេ ។
At this store	(not)	there are	many good books.	

[Top](#)

c. Interrogative Sentence with Verb (មាន)

--

A topic + តើ + មាន + Object + ឬទេ ?

Example:

Affirmative Sentence with Verb ( មាន )				
Topic	+ តើ	+ (មាន)	+ Object	ឬទេ ?
យើងទៅភោជនីយដ្ឋានដារា	តើ	មាន	ម្ហូបឆ្ងាញ់ៗ	ឬទេ ?
We will go to Dara restaurant	are	there	many delicious dishes?	
នៅសាលានេះ	តើ	មាន	និសិ្សច្រើន។	ឬទេ ?
At this school	are	there	many students?	
នៅភោជនីយដ្ឋាននេះ	តើ	មាន	មនុស្សច្រើន	ឬទេ ?
At this restaurant	are	there	many people?	
នៅផ្ទះខ្ញុំ	តើ	មាន	ទ្វារ មួយ	ឬទេ ?
At my house	is	there	a car?	
នៅហាងនេះ	តើ	មាន	សៀវភៅល្អៗច្រើន	ឬទេ ?
At this store	are	there	many good books?	
នៅជិតសណ្ឋាគារ		មាន	ហាងបាយ	ទេ?
Near the hotel	is	there	a restaurant?	

[Top](#)

Note:

In the interrogative sentence with verb( មាន ), the particle ( តើ ) at the beginning of the interrogative sentence can be dropped and the particle ( ឬ ) also can be dropped. Look at the last example in the table above.

## PRONUNCIATION

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>Word</u> <u>អង្គុយ</u> <u>to sit</u>          | 5. <u>Word</u> <u>ពិសារ</u> <u>to drink or eat</u> |
| 2. <u>Word</u> <u>ភោជនីយដ្ឋាន</u> <u>restaurant</u> | 6. <u>Word</u> <u>ភេសជ្ជៈ</u> <u>a drink</u>       |
| 3. <u>Word</u> ~ <u>រក</u> <u>looking for</u>       | 7. <u>Word</u> <u>តែទឹកកក</u> <u>ice tea</u>       |
| 4. <u>Word</u> <u>ឆ្ងាញ់</u> <u>to be delicious</u> | 8. <u>Word</u> <u>ម្ហូប</u> <u>food</u>            |

### 1. Word អង្គុយ (to sit)

Word (អង្គុយ) has two syllables. Consonant (ង) could take sub-consonants (្គ) as medial cluster.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
អង្គុយ	អង្គុយ	qaɑŋ kuy 

[Top](#)

### 2. Word ភោជនីយដ្ឋាន (restaurant)

Word (ភោជនីយដ្ឋាន) has 3 syllables. Consonant (ជ) could take sub-consonants (្ល) as medial cluster. In this case, consonant (ជ) remains silent.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
ភោជនីយដ្ឋាន	ភោជ នីយ ប៉ាន	pooç nii-thaan 

[Top](#)

### 3. Word រក (looking for)

All Khmer consonant, there is an inherent vowel. The inherent vowel for the first series consonant is /aa/ and second series consonant is /ɔɔ/. The second series consonant (រ) has an inherent vowel /ɔɔ/, therefore the pronunciation of this syllable is (rɔɔk).

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
រក	រក	rɔɔk 

[Top](#)

### 4. Word ឆ្ងាញ់ (delicious)

Consonant (ឆ) could take sub-consonants (្ល) as initial cluster. The diacritic bantaq (្ល) occurs on the top of the final consonant of a syllable and it is used to shorten the vowel of that

syllable. The full or partial reduplication sign Leiktoo (ៗ) is used to indicate that the word after which it occurs is to be repeated.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
ឆ្ងាញ់ៗ	ឆ្ងាញ់ៗ	chɣaŋ̌ chɣaŋ̌ 

[Top](#)

## 5. Word ពិសារ (to eat or drink)

Word (ពិសារ) has 2 syllables. Consonant (រ) at the end of the word remains silent.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
ពិសារ	ពិ សា	pi saa 

[Top](#)

## 6. Word ភេសជ្ជៈ (a drink but not alcohol)

Word (ភេសជ្ជៈ) has three syllables.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
ភេសជ្ជៈ	ភេ ស ច ជៈ	phee se cĕəɟ 

[Top](#)

## 7. Word តែទឹកកក (ice tea)

All Khmer consonant, there is an inherent vowel. The inherent vowel for the first series consonant is /aa/ and second series consonant is /ɔɔ/. The second series consonant (ក) has an inherent vowel /aa/, therefore the pronunciation of this syllable is (kaak)

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
តែទឹកកក	តែ ទឹក កក	tae tɨk kaak 

[Top](#)

## 8. Word ម្ហូប (food)

Consonant (ម) could take sub-consonants (្រ) as medial cluster.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
------------------	---------------	-----













# Unit 8

## Lesson 1: Looking for a Hotel

### មេរៀនទី ១: រកសណ្ឋាគារ

Listen to the Whole Conversation 







- សារីត: នៅសៀមរាបមានសណ្ឋាគារថោកល្មមទេ? 
- ដារា: បាទមាន។ សណ្ឋាគារអង្គរថោកហើយស្អាតទៀត។ 
- សារីត: សណ្ឋាគារនោះនៅឆ្ងាយពីទីក្រុងទេ ? 
- ដារា: មិនឆ្ងាយទេ។ វានៅជិតប្រាសាទអង្គរវត្ត។ 
- សារីត: មានហាងបាយនៅជិតសណ្ឋាគារទេ? 
- ដារា: ហាងបាយនៅខាងក្រោមសណ្ឋាគារនោះមានម្ហូបឆ្ងាញ់ណាស់។ 
- សារីត: ចុះដារាមានលេខទូរស័ព្ទសណ្ឋាគារនោះទេ ? 
- ខ្ញុំចង់កក់មួយបន្ទប់សំរាប់អាទិត្យក្រោយ។ 
- ដារា: បាទខ្ញុំមាន។ នេះលេខទូរស័ព្ទ ០១២ ៨៧០ ៩៩៩។ 
- សារីត: អរគុណដារា។ 

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English
នៅសៀមរាបមានសណ្ឋាគារ ថោកល្មមទេ?	nəw siəp riəp miəp san-thaa-kia thaok lməəm tee?	Are there any hotel with reasonable price in Siem Reap
បាទមាន។ សណ្ឋាគារអង្គរ ថោកហើយស្អាតទៀត។	baat miəp. san-thaa-kia qəŋ kəv thaok haəy sqaat tiət?	Yes there is. Angkor Hotel is cheap and clean.

សណ្ឋាគារនោះនៅឆ្ងាយពីទីក្រុងទេ?k	san-thaa-kiə nuh nɔw cɔŋaay pii tii kroŋ tee?	Is the hotel far from the city.
មិនឆ្ងាយទេ។ វានៅជិតប្រាសាទអង្គរវត្ត។	mɔn cɔŋaay tee. wiə nɔw cɪt praa-saat qɑŋ-kwə wət.	Not far. It is near Angkor Wat temple.
មានហាងបាយនៅជិតសណ្ឋាគារទេ?	mɔn haŋ baay nɔw cɪt san-thaa-kiə tee.	Is there a restaurant near the hotel?
ហាងបាយនៅខាងក្រោមសណ្ឋាគារនោះមានម្ហូបឆ្ងាញ់ណាស់។	haŋ baay nɔw khaŋ kraom san-thaa-kiə nuh mɔn mhoup chɔŋaŋ nah?	A restaurant in that hotel has delicious food.
ចុះដារាមានលេខទូរស័ព្ទសណ្ឋាគារនោះទេ ? ខ្ញុំចង់កក់មួយបន្ទប់សំរាប់អាទិត្យក្រោយ។	coh dara mɔn leeq tuu-rɔsap san-thaa-kiə nuh tee? kɔm caŋ kak muəy ban-tup sam-rap qaa-tit kraoy.	Do you have telephone numbers for the hotel? I want to book a room for next week.
បាទខ្ញុំមាន។ នេះលេខទូរស័ព្ទ ០១២៨៧០៩៩៩។	baat kɔm mɔn. nih leeq tuu-rɔsap soun dap pii pram- bəy rəy-cɪt səp pram-buən rəy kao səp pram buən.	Yes, I have. Here is the phone number 012 870 999.
អរគុណដារា។	qaa kun dara	Thank you Dara.

**Lesson 2: In a Hotel**  
មេរៀនទី ២: នៅសណ្ឋាគារ

Listen to the Whole Conversation 

- ផល: លោកមានបន្ទប់ទំនេរទេ? 
- អ្នកទទួលភ្ញៀវ:បាទ មាន។ លោកត្រូវការបន្ទប់ធំឬតូច? 
- ផល: បន្ទប់ធំសំរាប់ពីរនាក់។ 
- អ្នកទទួលភ្ញៀវ:លោកស្នាក់នៅប៉ុន្មានថ្ងៃ? 
- ផល: ប្រហែលមួយអាទិត្យ។ 
- អ្នកទទួលភ្ញៀវ:បន្ទប់ធំមានបន្ទប់ទឹក និងមាស៊ីនត្រជាក់មួយថ្ងៃ ២៥ 

ដុល្លារ។

ផល: មានបន្ទប់ថែកជាងនេះទេ?



អ្នកទទួលភ្ញៀវ: បាទមាន។ បន្ទប់មួយទៀតថ្លៃ ២០ ដុល្លារ។



ផល: ខ្ញុំសុំមើលបន្ទប់សិនបានទេ ?



អ្នកទទួលភ្ញៀវ: បាទ សូមអញ្ជើញ។



ផល: ខ្ញុំយកបន្ទប់ធំមួយ។



អ្នកទទួលភ្ញៀវ: បាទ អរគុណ។












Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
លោកមានបន្ទប់ទំនេរទេ?	look miəŋ bəŋ-tup tuum nee tee?	Do you have a vacant room?	
បាទ មាន។ លោកត្រូវការបន្ទប់ធំឬតូច?	baat miəŋ. look trəw kaa bəŋ-tup thum rɨ̃ tɔʊc?	Yes, I have. Do you like a big room or a small room?	
បន្ទប់ធំសំរាប់ពីរនាក់។	bəŋ-tup thum som-rap pii nəʔq.	A big room for two people.	
លោកស្នាក់នៅប៉ុន្មានថ្ងៃ?	look snaak nɨw pɔnmaan tɕaj?	How long will you stay?	
ប្រហែលមួយអាទិត្យ។	pro-hael muəy qaa tɨt.	About one week.	
បន្ទប់ធំមានបន្ទប់ទឹក និង ម៉ាស៊ីនត្រជាក់ មួយថ្ងៃ ២៥ ដុល្លារ។	bəŋ-tup thum miəŋ bəŋ-tup tɨk and masɔn trɑɑ cəʔq mə-npɕy prɑm dɔlaa.	A big room with bathroom and airconditioning is 25 dollar a day.	
មានបន្ទប់ថែកជាងនេះទេ?	miəŋ bəŋ-tup thaok ciəŋ nih tee?	Do you have a cheaper one?	
បាទមាន។ បន្ទប់មួយទៀតថ្លៃ ២០ ដុល្លារ។	baat miəŋ. bəŋ tup muəy tiət tlay mə pɕy dollar.	Yes, I have. The other room is 20 dollar.	
ខ្ញុំសុំមើលបន្ទប់សិនបានទេ?	kɨ̃nɔm som məʊl bəŋ-tup sən baan tee?	May I have a look?	
បាទ សូមអញ្ជើញ។	baat soum qaŋcəʊnɨ̃	Please, go ahead.	
ខ្ញុំយកបន្ទប់ធំមួយ។	kɨ̃nɔm yɔʊk bəŋ-tup thum muəy.	I take the big one.	
បាទ អរគុណ។	baat, qɑɑ-kun.	Yes, thank you.	

Lesson 3: Inquiring for a Hotel

មេរៀនទី ៣: សួររកសណ្ឋាគារ

Listen to the Whole Conversation 










- ចន: មានធ្លាប់ទៅលេងភ្នំពេញទេ? 
- ដារា: បាទខ្ញុំធ្លាប់ទៅលេងច្រើនដងហើយ។ 
- ចន: ពេលនៅភ្នំពេញ អ្នកស្នាក់នៅឯណា? 
- ដារា: ខ្ញុំស្នាក់នៅសណ្ឋាគារ ហ្គោលដិនហ្គេត។ 
- ចន: សណ្ឋាគារហ្នឹងស្អាតទេ? 
- ដារា: ស្អាតហើយមិនសូវថ្លៃទៀតផង។ 
- ចន: មួយយប់តម្លៃប៉ុន្មានដែរ? 
- ដារា: ប្រហែល ២៥ ដុល្លារ។ 
- ចន: មិនសូវថ្លៃប៉ុន្មានដែរ។ 




Khmer	Aid to Listening	English
មានធ្លាប់ទៅលេងភ្នំពេញទេ?	mɔn thlɔɔp tɔw leɛŋ pnum-pɔn tee?	Have you visited Phnom Penh?
បាទខ្ញុំធ្លាប់ទៅលេងច្រើនដង ហើយ។	baat kɔm thlɔɔp tɔw leɛŋ crɔɔn daɛŋ haɔy.	Yes, I have visited for many times.
ពេលនៅភ្នំពេញ អ្នកស្នាក់នៅឯណា?	peel nɔw pnum-pɔn nɛɔq snak nɔw qae naa ?	Where did you stay when you were in Phnom Penh?
ខ្ញុំស្នាក់នៅសណ្ឋាគារ ហ្គោលដិនហ្គេត។	kɔm snaaq nɔw santhaakiɔ Golden Gate.	I stayed at Golden Gate Hotel.
សណ្ឋាគារហ្នឹងស្អាតទេ?	santhaakiɔ nɔŋsqaat tee?	Is the hotel clean?
ស្អាតហើយមិនសូវថ្លៃ ទៀតផង។	sqaat haɔy mɔn sɔw tlay tiət phaɛŋ.	It is clean and also inexpensive.
មួយយប់តម្លៃប៉ុន្មានដែរ?	muɔy yup damlay ponmaan dae?	How much does it cost per night?
ប្រហែល ២៥ ដុល្លារ។	praɔ-hael mɔphɛy-pram dulaa.	It is about 25 dollars.
មិនសូវថ្លៃប៉ុន្មានដែរ។	mɔn-sɔw tlay ponmaan dae.	It is not very expensive.



Lesson 4: Meeting in the Hotel

មេរៀនទី ៤: ជួបគ្នានៅសណ្ឋាគារ

Listen to the Whole Conversation 








- សារ៉េត: ជំរាបសួរលោកដារា? 
- ដារា: ជំរាបសួរលោកសារ៉េត។ 
- លោកស្នាក់នៅសណ្ឋាគារនេះដែរ?
- សារ៉េត: បាទ ហ្នឹងហើយ។ 
- ដារា: លោកមកដល់ភ្នំពេញប៉ុន្មានថ្ងៃហើយ? 
- សារ៉េត: ប្រហែលមួយអាទិត្យហើយ។ 
- ដារា: លោកមកធ្វើការឬមកលេង? 
- សារ៉េត: ខ្ញុំមកលេងបងប្រុសខ្ញុំ។ 
- ខ្ញុំមិនដែលជួបគាត់ច្រើនឆ្នាំហើយ។
- ដារា: លោកត្រលប់ទៅវិញថ្ងៃណាដែរ? 
- សារ៉េត: ខ្ញុំត្រលប់ទៅវិញនៅថ្ងៃអង្គារ។ 

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
ជំរាបសួរលោកដារា?	cum riəp suə look daaraa ?	Hello, Mr. Dara?	
ជំរាបសួរលោកសារ៉េត។ លោក ស្នាក់នៅសណ្ឋាគារនេះដែរ?	cum riəp suə look Sareit. look snaq nɛw santhaakɔə nih dae?	Hello, Mr. Saret. Are you staying in this hotel too?	
បាទ ហ្នឹងហើយ។	Baat nɛŋ haøy.	Yes.	
លោកមកដល់ភ្នំពេញប៉ុន្មាន ថ្ងៃហើយ?	look mɔək dal pnɔm-pɛŋ ponmaan thŋay haøy?	How many days have you been in Phnom Penh?	
ប្រហែលមួយអាទិត្យហើយ។	prahael muøy qaatit haøy .	Approximately one week already.	
លោកមកធ្វើការឬមកលេង?	look mɔək twəə kaa rɛɛ mɔək leəŋ ?	Did you come here for business or for a visit?	

ខ្ញុំមកលេងបងប្រុសខ្ញុំ។ ខ្ញុំមិនដែលជួបគាត់ ច្រើនឆ្នាំហើយ។	kñom məək leəŋ braŋ-proh kñom. kñom mən dæl cuəp kōət craən cnam haəy.	I came here to visit my older brother. I have not met him for a number of years.	
លោកត្រលប់ទៅវិញថ្ងៃណា?	look tralap tɨw wɨŋ tɨj naa?	When will you go back?	
ថ្ងៃអង្គារខ្ញុំត្រលប់ទៅ វិញហើយ។	tɨj qaŋkiəw kñom tralap tɨw wɨŋ haəy .	I will go back on Tuesday.	

**Lesson 5: Looking for a House to Rent**  
 មេរៀនទី ៥: រកផ្ទះជួល

Listen to the Whole Conversation 

- ផល: ជំរាបសួរ។ 
- សារ៉េត: នៅជិតនេះមានផ្ទះជួលទេ? 
- ផល: នៅជិតនេះខ្ញុំមិនដឹងទេ។ បើនៅជិតផ្ទះខ្ញុំមានពីរឬបីដែរ។ 
- សារ៉េត: ស្អាតទេ ? ធំឬតូច ? 
- ផល: មួយធំមាន៥បន្ទប់។ ពីរទៀតតូចៗ  
ខ្ញុំថាស្អាតហើយមិនសូវថ្លៃទេ។ 
- សារ៉េត: ជូនខ្ញុំទៅមើលផងបានទេ? 
- ផល: បានចង់ទៅពេលណា ? ប្រាប់ខ្ញុំ ខ្ញុំជូនទៅ ? 

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English
ជំរាបសួរ។	cum riəp suə.	Hello.
នៅជិតនេះ មានផ្ទះជួលទេ?	nəw cɨt nih miəŋ ptəəh cuəl tee?	Is there a house for rent near here?
នៅជិតនេះ ខ្ញុំមិនដឹងទេ។	nəw cɨt nih kñom mən dɨŋ tee. baə nəw cɨt ptəəh kñom miəŋ pii bəy	I don't know if there is near here. There are two or three near my house.

បើនៅជិតផ្ទះមានពីរបីដែរ។	dae.	
ស្អាតទេ ? ធំឬតូច ?	sqaat tee? thum rɨ̃ touc?	Is the house look nice? Big or small?
មួយធំមាន៥បន្ទប់។ ពីរទៀតតូចៗ។ ខ្ញុំថាស្អាតហើយមិនសូវថ្លៃទេ។	muoy thum miə̃n pram bə̃n-tup. pii tiət touc touc. kñom thaa sqaat, haoy mɔ̃n səw tlay tee.	One is five rooms and the other two are small. I think the house is clean and they are not very expensive.
ជូនខ្ញុំទៅមើលផងបានទេ?	coun kñom tɨw məəl phə̃ŋ baan tee?	Can you take me to have a look at those house?
បានចង់ទៅពេលណា ? ប្រាប់ខ្ញុំ ខ្ញុំជូនទៅ ?	baan, caŋ tɨw peil naa? brap kñom, kñom coun tɨw.	When do you want to go? Tell me I will take you there.

## Useful Words

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English
កក់	kak	to reserve
ច្រើនដង	craə̃n daaŋ	many times
ឆ្ងាញ់	chŋaŋ	delicious
ឆ្ងាយ	cŋaay	far
ឆ្នាំ	cnam	year
ជិត	cɨt	near
ជូន	cuun	take (someone) to

ដឹង	dɨŋ	know
តម្លៃ	damlay	cost
ជួប	cuəp	to meet
តូច	touc	small
ថោក	thaok	to be cheap
ថោកជាង	thaok ciəŋ	to be cheaper
ថោកល្មម	thaok-lmɔəm	reasonable price
ថ្លៃ	tlay	expensive
ទំនេរ	tuum nee	vacant
ទៅលេង	tɨw leeŋ	visit
ធំ	thum	big
ធ្លាប់	thlɔəp	used to (have been)
ធ្វើការ	twəə kaa	work (business)
បន្ទប់	bən-tup	room
បន្ទប់ទឹក	bən-tup tɨk	bathroom
ប្រហែល	pro-hael	approximately
ប្រាសាទ	praa-saat	temple



ផ្ទះជួល	ptěəh cuəl	house for rent
មកដល់	məək da	arrive (have been to)
ម៉ាស៊ីនត្រជាក់	masən traa cěəq	airconditioning
មិនដែល	mɪn dæɪ	never (have not met)
មិនសូវ	mɪn səw	not so expensive
មួយអាទិត្យ	muəy qaa tɪt	one week.
ម្ហូប	mhoup	food.
យក	yəək	take
លេខទូរស័ព្ទ	leeq tuu-rəsap	telephone number
សណ្ឋាគារ	san-thaa-kiə	hotel
សំរាប់	som-rap	for
សុំមើល	som əməl	to have a look
ស្នាក់នៅ	snaak nɛw	stay
ស្អាត	sqaat	clean (nice beautiful)
ហាងបាយ	haaŋ baay	restaurant

## Grammar

Verb (មាន) as a Modal Verb

1. Affirmative Sentence with Verb (មាន) as a Modal Verb
2. Negative Sentence with Verb (មាន) as a Modal Verb
3. Interrogative Sentence with Verb (មាន) as a Modal Verb
4. Note

Verb (មាន) as a Modal Verb

The verb (មាន) occurs in the modal verb position, it means something like 'to happen to', to have occasion (to do something)' as in (pro-drop) language. In some dialects mien tends to replace the modal verb baan 'to have done something, to have had occasion to do something.

1. Affirmative Sentence with Verb (មាន) as a Modal Verb

Subject + មាន + Verb + Object

Example:

Affirmative Sentence with Verb (មាន) as a Modal Verb				
Subject	+	(មាន)	+	Verb + Object
ខ្ញុំ		មាន		ធ្លាប់ ទៅលេងភ្នំពេញ។
I have had occasion to visit Phnom Penh or I have visited Phnom Penh.				
យើង		មាន		ស្គាល់ កន្លែងច្រើន។
We have known many places or I have knowledge of many places.				
គាត់		មាន		ធ្លាប់ ទៅអាស្រុកខ្មែរ។
He has had occasion to visit Cambodia or He has visited Cambodia.				
ខ្ញុំ		មាន		ដឹង កន្លែងលក់ឡានច្រើន។
I have known many car dealers.				
ពួកគេ		មាន		រៀន ខ្មែរបន្តិចបន្តួច។
They have studies some Khmer or They are happen to study some khmer.				

## 2. Negative Sentence with Verb (មាន) as a Modal Verb

Subject + មិន + មាន + Verb + Object + ទេ

Example:

Negative Sentence with Verb (មាន) as a Modal Verb								
Subject	+	មិន	+	(មាន)	+	Verb + Object	+	ទេ
ខ្ញុំ		មិន		មាន		ធ្លាប់ ទៅលេងភ្នំពេញ		ទេ
I have not had occasion to visit Phnom Penh or I have not visited Phnom Penh.								
យើង		មិន		មាន		ស្គាល់ កន្លែងច្រើន		ទេ
We have not known many places or I have not knowledge of many places.								
គាត់		មិន		មាន		ធ្លាប់ ទៅអាស្រុកខ្មែរ		ទេ
He has not had occasion to visit Cambodia or He has not visited Cambodia.								
ខ្ញុំ		មិន		មាន		ដឹង កន្លែងលក់ឡានច្រើន		ទេ
I have not known many car dealers.								
ពួកគេ		មិន		មាន		រៀន ខ្មែរបន្តិចបន្តួច		ទេ
They have not studies some Khmer or They are not happen to study some khmer.								

[Top](#)

## 3. Interrogative Sentence with Verb (មាន) as a Modal Verb

តើ + Subject + មាន + Verb + Object + ឬទេ ?

Example:

Interrogative Sentence with Verb (មាន) as a Modal Verb

តើ + Subject + (មាន) + Verb + Object + ឬទេ ?  
 តើ លោក មាន ធ្លាប់ ទៅលេងភ្នំពេញ ឬទេ ?  
 Have you had an occasion to visit Phnom Penh? or Have you visited Phnom Penh?

តើ ពួកគេ មាន ស្គាល់ កន្លែងច្រើន ឬទេ ?  
 Have they known many places? or Have they had knowledge of many places.

តើ នាង មាន ធ្លាប់ ទៅអាស្រុកខ្មែរ ឬទេ ?  
 Has she had occasion to visit Cambodia? or Has she visited Cambodia?

តើ លោក មាន ដឹង កន្លែងលក់ឡានច្រើន ឬទេ ?  
 Have you known many car dealers?

តើ ពួកគេ មាន រៀន ខ្មែរបន្តិចបន្តួច ឬទេ ?  
 Have they studies some Khmer? or Are they happen to study some khmer?

[Top](#)

Note:

Verb (មាន) as a modal verb is commonly used in the interrogative sentence

# PRONUNCIATION

1. Word	<u>សណ្ឋាគារ</u>	<u>hotel</u>	5. Word	<u>ទូរស័ព្ទ</u>	<u>telephone</u>
2. Word	<u>ថ្លៃកម្រៃ</u>	<u>reasonable price</u>	6. Word	<u>ហ្នឹង</u>	<u>that</u>
3. Word	~ <u>ស្អាត</u>	<u>to be clean</u>	7. Word	<u>បន្ទប់</u>	<u>room</u>
4. Word	<u>កក់</u>	<u>to deposit</u>	8. Word	<u>ម៉ាស៊ីនត្រជាក់</u>	<u>airconditioning</u>

## 1. Word សណ្ឋាគារ ( hotel )

Noun (សណ្ឋាគារ) has three syllables. Consonant (ណ) could take sub-consonants (្ហ) as medial cluster. Consonant (រ) at the end of the word remains silent. Consonant (ថ) and (ប័) have the same sound, loaned words from Sanskrit and Pali are often spell with (ប័).

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
សណ្ឋាគារ	សន់ ថា គា	sun-thaa-kio 

## 2. Word ថែកល្មម ( reasonable price )

Word ( ថែកល្មម ) has two syllables. Consonant ( ល ) could take sub-consonants ( ្ម ) as initial cluster. In this case.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
ថែកល្មម	ថែក ល្មម	thaok lmɔɔm 

## 3. Word ស្អាតិ ( medical doctor )

Consonant ( ស ) could take sub-consonants ( ្អ ) as initial cluster.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
ស្អាតិ	ស្អាតិ	sqaat 

## 4. Word កក់ ( to deposit )

All Khmer consonant, there is an inherent vowel. The inherent vowel for the first series consonant is /aa/ and second series consonant is /ɔɔ/. The first series consonant ( ក ) has an inherent vowel /aa/, therefore the pronunciation of this syllable is (kɔɔk). The diacritic bantaq ( ័ ) occurs on the top of the final consonant of a syllable and it is used to shorten the vowel of that syllable.

Word Without Diacritic			Word With Diacritic		
កក	kaak	to be frozen	កក់	kak	to deposit 

## 5. Word ទូរស័ព្ទ ( telephone )

Word ( ទូរស័ព្ទ ) has three syllables. Consonant ( វ ) in the middle of this word is pronounced with its inherent vowel /ɔɔ/. Diacritic Sanyok Sanha ( ័ ) is used in a certain loaned words from Pali or Sanskrit. The syllable ( ស័ព្ទ ), the diacritic has the same value as vowel (- ɪ ). Sub-consonant ( ្ម ) found under consonant ( ព ) is not pronounced in syllable ( ស័ព្ទ ).

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
------------------	---------------	-----

ទូរស័ព្ទ

ទូរសារ

tuu-rɔsap



[Top](#)

### 6. Word ហ្នឹង (that)

Word (ហ្នឹង) has a syllable. Consonant (ហ) is silent. Sub-consonant (្ន) is pronounced as a replacement to consonant (ហ).

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
ហ្នឹង	នឹង	nɪŋ

[Top](#)

### 7. Word បន្ទប់ (room)

Consonant (ន) take sub-consonants (្ន) as medial cluster. All Khmer consonant, there is an inherent vowel. The inherent vowel for the first series consonant is /aa/ and second series consonant is /oo/. The second series consonant (ទ) has an inherent vowel /aa/, therefore the pronunciation of this syllable is (taap). The diacritic bantaq (្ន) occurs on the top of the final consonant of a syllable and it is used to shorten the vowel of that syllable.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
បន្ទប់	បន ទប់	ban-tup

[Top](#)

### 8. Word មាស៊ីនត្រជាក់ (airconditioning)

The word (មាស៊ីនត្រជាក់) has four syllables. Kbiəŋ kroam (្ន) is used in lieu of diacritic Trəysap (្ន) when consonants are used with vowels (្ន្ន្ន្ន).










Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
មាស៊ីនត្រជាក់	មាស៊ីនត្រជាក់	ma sən traɔ cɛəɔ

# Unit 9

## Lesson 1: Asking Time

### មេរៀនទី ១: សួរម៉ោង

Listen to the Whole Conversation 









- សុខ: **a** ក្រោកឡើងភ្លឺហើយ 
- វិណា: ម៉ោងប៉ុន្មានហើយ ? 
- សុខ: ម៉ោងជិត ៦:០០ ហើយ។ យើងមិនគួរយឺតទេ 
- ព្រោះថ្ងៃនេះជាថ្ងៃចូលរៀនដំបូង។
- វិណា: មែនហើយយើងត្រូវទៅអោយទាន់ម៉ោង។ 
- យើងចូលរៀនម៉ោងប៉ុន្មាន?
- សុខ: ម៉ោង ៧:៣០ នាទី។ 
- វិណា: មិនអីទេនៅសល់ពេលច្រើនដែរ។ 
- យើងគួរព្យុំអាហារពេលព្រឹក រួចសិនសិមទៅ។
- សុខ: អញ្ចឹងក៏បាន។ 
- វិណា: ខ្ញុំធ្វើរួចហើយព្យុំទៅ។ 
- សុខ: អរគុណច្រើន។ 

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English
ភ្នាក់ឡើង ភ្លឺហើយ	pñeək laəŋ plɨ haəy!	Wake up, it is already dawn!.
ម៉ោងប៉ុន្មានហើយ?	maoŋ ponmaan haəy ?	What time is it?
ម៉ោងជិត ៦:០០ ហើយ។ យើងមិនគួរយឺតទេ ព្រោះថ្ងៃនេះជាថ្ងៃចូលរៀនដំបូង។	maoŋ cit pram-muəy haəy. yəəŋ mɨn kuə yɨt tee pruəh thɨy nɨh ciə thɨy coul riən dam-dambouŋ.	It is almost six o'clock. We shouldn't be late because it is the first day of school.
មែនហើយយើងត្រូវទៅ អោយទាន់ម៉ោង។ យើងចូលរៀនម៉ោងប៉ុន្មាន?	mɛɛn haəy yəəŋ trəv tɨw qaoy təən maoŋ. yəəŋ coul riən maoŋ ponmaan?	Of course we should get there on time. What time does class start?
ម៉ោង ៧:៣០ នាទី។	maoŋ prampil saamsəp niətii.	At seven-thirty.

មិនអីទេនៅសល់ពេលច្រើនដែរ។ យើងគួរញ៉ាំអាហារ ពេលព្រឹករួចសិនសឹមទៅ។	mɨn qəy tae nɨw səl peel craən dae. yəwŋ kuə ñam qaahaa peel-prɨk ruəc sən sɨm tɨw.	No problem; we still have time. We should eat breakfast before we go.
អញ្ចឹងក៏បាន។	qañcəw kɑɑ baan.	That's fine.
ខ្ញុំធ្វើរួចហើយញ៉ាំទៅ។	kñom tvəə ruəc-haəy ñam tɨw.	I made it already go ahead and it.
អរគុណច្រើន។	qɑɑ-kun craən.	Thank you.

**Lesson 2: Days of a Week**  
**មេរៀនទី ២: ថ្ងៃក្នុងសប្តាហ៍**

Listen to the Whole Conversation 

- សុខៈ **a** ម្សិលមិញអ្នកទៅណា ? 
- សារ៉េតៈ ខ្ញុំទៅសារមន្ទីរទៅមើលរូបចម្លាក់ តែសារមន្ទីរបិទទ្វារ។ 
- សុខៈ សារមន្ទីរមិនបើកទេនៅថ្ងៃច័ន្ទ។ 
- សារ៉េតៈ លោកដឹងសារមន្ទីរបើកនៅថ្ងៃណាខ្លះទេ? 
- សុខៈ គេបើកពីថ្ងៃអង្គារដល់ថ្ងៃសៅរ៍ ហើយបិទថ្ងៃអាទិត្យ  
និងថ្ងៃច័ន្ទ។ 
- សារ៉េតៈ អរគុណលោកសុខ។ 
- សុខៈ អាទិត្យក្រោយប្រសិនបើលោកទៅទូរស័ព្ទហៅខ្ញុំផង  
ព្រោះខ្ញុំចង់ទៅដែរ។ 
- សារ៉េតៈ ហ្នឹងហើយចាំខ្ញុំទូរស័ព្ទទៅ។ 










Khmer	Aid to Listening	English
ម្សិលមិញអ្នកទៅណា ?	msəl mɨñ nəəw tɨw naa?	Where did you go yesterday?
ខ្ញុំទៅសារមន្ទីរទៅមើល រូបចម្លាក់ តែសារមន្ទីរ បិទទ្វារ។	kñom tɨw saraq-mñəntɨ tɨw ម៉័វ ruup camlaq tae saraq-mñəntɨ bət twiə.	I went to the museum to see statues. It was closed.
សារមន្ទីរមិនបើកទេនៅ ថ្ងៃច័ន្ទ។	saraq-mñəntɨ mɨn baək tee nɨw thɨŋay can.	The museum is not open on Monday.



លោកដឹងសារមន្ទីរបើក នៅថ្ងៃណាខ្លះទេ?	look dəŋ saraq-mŋəntɨ baək nɨw thŋay naa klah tee?	Sir, do you know on what days it is open?
គេបើកពីថ្ងៃអង្គារដល់ ថ្ងៃសៅរ៍ ហើយបិទ ថ្ងៃអាទិត្យ និងថ្ងៃច័ន្ទ។	kee baək pii thŋay qɑŋkiəɔ dal thŋay saw haøy bət thŋay qatɨt nɨŋ thŋay can.	It is open from Tuesday to Saturday and closed on Sunday and Monday.
អរគុណលោកសុខ។	qɑɑ-kun look sok.	Thanks Mr. Saret.
អាទិត្យក្រោយប្រសិនបើ លោកទៅទូរស័ព្ទហៅខ្ញុំផង ព្រោះខ្ញុំចង់ទៅដែរ។	qatɨt kraoy prsəɔn bəa look tɨw tuurəəsap haw kŋom phaɑŋ pruəh kŋom caŋ tɨw dae.	Next week give me a call if you go .
ហ្នឹងហើយចាំខ្ញុំទូរស័ព្ទទៅ។	nəŋ haøy cam kŋom tuurəəsap tɨw.	Sure, I will call you.

Lesson 3:            Month and  
   Year  
មេរៀនទី ៣:        ខែនិងឆ្នាំ

Listen to the Whole Conversation 

- សុខ: លោកទៅស្រុកខ្មែរពេលណា ? 
- វិណា: បាទខ្ញុំនឹងទៅខែតុលាឆ្នាំក្រោយ។ 
- សុខ: លោកត្រលប់មកវិញខែណាដែរ ? 
- វិណា: ខ្ញុំនឹងត្រលប់មកវិញនៅខែមករាឆ្នាំក្រោយ។ 
- សុខ: នៅស្រុកខ្មែរ រដូវនេះល្អណាស់ ព្រោះវាមិនស្ងួតក្តៅ។ 
- វិណា: ហ្នឹងហើយ រដូវនេះត្រជាក់បន្តិច។ 
- សុខ: លោកទៅធ្វើអីដល់ទៅបីបួនខែណោះ? 
- វិណា: ខ្ញុំទៅស្រាវជ្រាវ។ 
- សុខ: អូរ អញ្ចឹង 

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
លោកទៅស្រុកខ្មែរពេលណា ?	look tɿw srok-kmae peel-naa?	When are you going to Cambodia?	
បាទខ្ញុំនឹងទៅខែតុលាឆ្នាំក្រោយ។	baat kñom nɿŋ tɿw kae tola cnam kraoy.	I will go to cambodia in October next year.	
លោកត្រលប់មកវិញខែណាដែរ?	look tralap mɔɔk wɿñ kae naa dae?	What month are you going to come back?	
ខ្ញុំនឹងត្រលប់មកវិញនៅខែមករា។	kñom tralap mɔɔk wɿñ nɿw kae cnam kaoy.	I will go back in January.	
នៅស្រុកខ្មែរ រដូវនេះល្អណាស់ ព្រោះវាមិនស្ងួត។	nɿw srok-kmae rəðəw nɿh lqaa nah prűəh wiə mɿn səw kdaw.	It is very nice in this season because it is not hot.	
ហ្នឹងហើយ រដូវនេះត្រជាក់បន្តិច។	nɿŋ haoy rəðəw nɿh trəcəəq bantəc.	You are right, this season is a bit colder.	
លោកទៅធ្វើអីដល់ទៅបីបួនខែ ឯណោះ?	look tɿw twəə qəy dal tɿw bəy buən khæe qae-noh?	Why do you have to be there for three to four months?	
ខ្ញុំទៅស្រាវជ្រាវ។	cəm-puh kñom, kñom coul cit miəŋ tɿjəy ciəŋ miəŋ pliəŋ.	I will do my research over there.	
អូ អញ្ចឹង	kñom kəw qañ-cəŋ dae.	Oh! I know.	

Lesson 4: Making Appointment

មេរៀនទី ៤: ការណាត់ជួប

Listen to the Whole Conversation 

សុខៈ: ជំរាបសួរ នេះជាការិយាល័យវេជ្ជបណ្ឌិត ហុក ហៀង។  
អ្នកនាងមានការអ្វីដែរ ? 

ណារី: ខ្ញុំមិនសូវស្រួលខ្លួនសោះប៉ុន្មានថ្ងៃនេះ។  
ខ្ញុំចង់ពិគ្រោះជាមួយលោកវេជ្ជបណ្ឌិតបន្តិច។ 

សុខៈ: សប្តាហ៍នេះគាត់ទំនេរនៅថ្ងៃពុធ ម៉ោង ៣:៣០នាទី និងម៉ោង  
៤:៣០នាទី។ 

ណារី: ខ្ញុំជាប់រល់រហូតនៅថ្ងៃពុធ។ 

សុខ: ប្រសិនបើអ្នកនាងអាចមកថ្ងៃសុក្រវិញលោកវេជ្ជបណ្ឌិត  
អាចជួបអ្នកនាងបាននៅចន្លោះពីម៉ោងមួយទៅម៉ោងបីល្ងាច។



ណារី: អញ្ជឹង ខ្ញុំអាចទៅម៉ោងពីរបានទេ ?



សុខ: បានអ្នកនាង។ អ្នកនាងឈ្មោះអ្វីដែរ ?



ណារី: ចាន់ ណារី។



សុខ: អរគុណអ្នកនាង។



Khmer	Aid to Listening	English
<p>ជំរាបសួរ នេះជាការិយាល័យ វេជ្ជបណ្ឌិត ហុក ហៀង។ អ្នកនាងមានការអ្វីដែរ ?</p>	<p>cum riəp suə nɛh ciə kaariyaalay look veiccěək-bandɛt hok hiəŋ. nĕəq-niəŋ miən kaa qwəy dae?</p>	<p>Hello. This is Dr. Hok Hieng's office. Could you tell me the reason for your call?</p>
<p>ខ្ញុំមិនសូវស្រួលខ្លួនសោះ ប៉ុន្មាន ថ្ងៃនេះ។ ខ្ញុំចង់ពិគ្រោះជាមួយ លោកវេជ្ជបណ្ឌិតបន្តិច។</p>	<p>kĕom mən səw sruəl kluən tee ponmaan tɔjaj nih. kĕom caŋ pikrŭəh ciəmuəy look veiccěək- bandɛt bantəc.</p>	<p>I have not been feeling well over the last few days. I would like to consult the doctor.</p>
<p>សប្តាហ៍នេះគាត់ទំនេរនៅ ថ្ងៃពុធ ម៉ោង ៣:៣០នាទី និងម៉ោង ៤:៣០នាទី។</p>	<p>sapdaa nih kŏət tumnee nɛw tɔjaj put maəŋ bəy-saamsəp niətii nɛŋ buən-saamsəp niətii.</p>	<p>For this week, he is free on Wednesday at 3: 30 and 4:30.</p>
<p>ខ្ញុំជាប់រវល់រហូតនៅថ្ងៃពុធ។</p>	<p>kĕom cŏəp rəwvŭəl rəw-hout nɛw tɔjaj put.</p>	<p>I am busy all day on Wednesday.</p>
<p>ប្រសិនបើអ្នកនាងអាច មកថ្ងៃសុក្រវិញលោក វេជ្ជបណ្ឌិតអាចជួបអ្នកនាង បាននៅចន្លោះពី ម៉ោង មួយទៅម៉ោងបីល្ងាច។</p>	<p>praśən-băə nĕəq-niəŋ məək tɔjaj sok wɛkĕ look veiccěək-bandɛt qaac cŭəp nĕəq-niəŋ baan nɛw canlah pii məəŋ məy tɛw məəŋ bəy lɔjəc.</p>	<p>If you could come on Friday instead, the doctor can see you between one to three p.m.</p>
<p>អញ្ជឹងខ្ញុំអាចទៅម៉ោងពីរ បានទេ ?</p>	<p>qəkĕəŋ kĕom qaac tɛw məəŋ pii baan tee?</p>	<p>Then, can I come at two o' clock.</p>
<p>បានអ្នកនាង។ អ្នកនាងឈ្មោះអ្វីដែរ ?</p>	<p>baan nĕəq-niəŋ. nĕəq-niəŋ cmŭəh qwəy dae?</p>	<p>That is fine, sir. What is your full name?</p>
<p>ចាន់ ណារី។</p>	<p>can navy.</p>	<p>Can Sok.</p>
<p>អរគុណអ្នកនាង។</p>	<p>qəə-kuun nĕəq-niəŋ.</p>	<p>Thank you, sir.</p>

## Useful Words

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	Listening
កក្កដា	kaqkədaa	July	
កញ្ញា	kañña	September	
ការិយាល័យ	kaariyaalay	office	
កុម្ភៈ	kumphəəq	February	
ក្តៅ	kdaw	hot	
ក្រោយ	kraoy	next (day)	
ខែ	khae	month	
ឆ្នាំ	cnam	year	
ដំបូង	dəmbouŋ	beginning	
តុលា	tola	October	
ត្រជាក់	tracəəq	cold	
ត្រឡប់	tralap	to return	
ថ្ងៃ	tŋay	day	
ថ្ងៃច័ន្ទ	tŋay-can	Monday	
ថ្ងៃអង្គារ	tŋay-qəŋkiə	Tuesday	
ថ្ងៃពុធ	tŋay-put	Wednesday	
ថ្ងៃព្រហស្បតិ៍	tŋay-prəhəəh	Thursday	
ថ្ងៃសុក្រ	tŋay-sok	Friday	
ថ្ងៃសៅរ៍	tŋay-saw	Saturday	
ថ្ងៃអាទិត្យ	tŋay-qatət	Sunday	
ទូរស័ព្ទហៅ	tuurəəsap haw	to call (telephone)	
ទំនេរ	tumnee	free, available	
ធ្នូ	tneu	December	

នាទី	niətii	minute	
បន្តិច	bantəc	a little bit	
បិទ	bət	close	
បើក	baək	open	
ប្រសិនបើ	prəsən bəa	If	
ពិគ្រោះ	pikrǔəh	to consult	
ពេល	peel	time	
ពេលណា	peel-naa	when	
ពេលព្រឹក	peel prɪq	morning time	
ព្រោះ	pruəh	because	
ភ្ញាក់ឡើង	pñeək laəŋ	Wake up	
ភ្លឺ	plɛ	dawn	
មករា	mǎəkəraa	January	
ម៉ោង	maəŋ	hour	
មិថុនា	mithonaa	June	
មិនា	minaa	Match	
មុន	mun	last (day)	
មេសា	meesaa	April	
ម្សិលមិញ	msəl mɛŋ	yesterday	
រដូវ	rəw-dəw	season	
រូបចម្លាក់	ruup camlaq	statues	
វិច្ឆិកា	wɪccəkkaa	November	
វិនាទី	winiətii	second	
វេជ្ជបណ្ឌិត	veiccǎk-bandɪt	doctor	
សប្តាហ៍ ឬ អាទិត្យ	sapaadaa	week	
សារមន្ទីរ	saraq-mǎntɛ	museum	
សីហា	səyhaa	August	
ស្រាវជ្រាវ	sraaw crieu	research	

ស្រុកខ្មែរ	srok-kmae	Cambodia	
អាហារ	qaa haa	food	
ឧសភា	quhsəphiə	May	

# Grammar

## I. Adverb of Time Use in Past Tense

### II. Past Tense

1. Affirmative sentence
2. Negative sentence
3. Interrogative sentence

### I. Adverb of Time

Adverb of time is very important in Khmer past tense, it provides precise information about past tense. Adverb of time uses for past tense includes:

Adverb of Time			
ពេលមុន	peel mun	last time	
តាំងពីមុន	tanj pii mun	before this time	
ម្សិលមិញ	msəl mən	yesterday	
ថ្ងៃអាទិត្យមុន	thjai qaa tit mun	last week	
ម្សិលមួយថ្ងៃ	msəl muəy thjai	the day before yester day	
ថ្ងៃមុន	thjai mun	last day	
ខែមុន	khae mun	last month	
ឆ្នាំមុន	chnam mun	last year	
យប់មិញ	yəp mən	last night	
កាលពីយូរណាស់មកហើយ	kaal pii yuu nah mək haəy	once upon a time	
ក្នុងបុរាណកាល	knoj bo raanə kaal	in the ancient times	

មុនៗ៖

mun nih

just or a little time ago

Note:

Khmer adverb of time is usually found at the beginning or at the end of the sentence.

[Top](#)

## II. Past Tense

The structure of past tense in Khmer language is different from English. The past tense is formed by adding adverb of time to the beginning or at the end of the present tense.

### 1. Affirmative Sentence:

Affirmative Sentence for Past Tense			
Adverb of Time for Past Tense	+	Present Tense	
Adverb of Time for Past Tense	+	Subject	+ Verb
Adverb of Time for Past Tense	+	Subject	+ Verb + Object

Or

Affirmative Sentence for Past Tense			
Present Tense		+	Adverb of Time for Past
Subject	+ Verb	+ Object	+ Adverb of Time for Past Tense
Subject	+ Verb	+ Object	+ Adverb of Time for Past Tense

Example:

Affirmative Sentence for Past Tense	

Adv for PT ម្សិលមិញ	+Subject + ខ្ញុំ	Verb ទៅ	+ Object សារមន្ទីរ។
Yesterday ម្ដេចមុន	I ខ្ញុំ	go to (went) ជួប	the museum. សារមន្ទីរ។
Last month យប់មិញ	I ខ្ញុំ	meet (met) យំ។	Saret.
Last night ឆ្នាំមុន	I គាត់	cry (cried) ទៅលេង	ស្រុកខ្មែរ។
Last year មុននេះ	he នាង	visits (visited) មក	Cambodia សាលារបស់ខ្ញុំ។
A little time ago ថ្ងៃអាទិត្យមុន	she ពួកគេ	comes to (came) ស្នាក់នៅ	my school. សណ្ឋាគារនេះ។
Last week ថ្ងៃមុន	they ខ្ញុំ	stays (stayed) ទិញ	in this hotel. កុំព្យូទ័រមួយ។
Last day (one day in the past)	I	buy (bought)	a computer.

[Top](#)

## 2. Negative Sentence for Past Tense

The negative sentence for past tense is formed by adding adverb of time to the beginning or at the end of the negative present tense.

Negative Sentence for Past Tense		
Adverb of Time for Past Tense	+	Negative Present Tense
Adverb of Time for Past Tense	+	Subject + មិន or អត់ + Verb + ទេ
Adverb of Time for Past Tense	+	Subject + មិន or អត់ + Verb + Object + ទេ

Or

Negative Sentence for Past Tense		
Present Tense	+	Adverb of Time for Past Tense
Subject + មិន or អត់ + Verb + ទេ	+	Adverb of Time for Past Tense
Subject + មិន or អត់ + Verb + Object + ទេ	+	Adverb of Time for Past Tense

Example:



### Affirmative Sentence for Past Tense

Adv for PT	+ Subject +	មិន	+ Verb	+ Object	+ ទេ
ម្សិលមិញ	ខ្ញុំ	មិន	ទៅ	សារមន្ទីរ	ទេ។
Yesterday	I	did not	go to	the museum.	
ម្ភៃមុន	ខ្ញុំ	មិន	ជួប	សារីត	ទេ។
Last month	I	did not	meet	Saret.	
យប់មិញ	ខ្ញុំ	មិន	យំ		ទេ។
Last night	I	did not	cry		
ឆ្នាំមុន	គាត់	មិន	ទៅលេង	ស្រុកខ្មែរ	ទេ។
Last year	he	did not	visit	Cambodia	
មុននេះ	នាង	មិន	មក	សាលារបស់ខ្ញុំ	ទេ។
A little time ago	she	did not	comes to	my school.	
ថ្ងៃអាទិត្យមុន	ពួកគេ	មិន	ស្នាក់នៅ	សណ្ឋាគារនេះ	ទេ។
Last week	they	did not	stay	in this hotel.	
ថ្ងៃមុន	ខ្ញុំ	មិន	ទិញ	កុំព្យូទ័រមួយ	ទេ។
Last day (one day in the past)	I	did not	buy	a computer.	

[Top](#)

### 3. Interrogative Sentence for Past Tense

The interrogative sentence for past tense is formed by adding adverb of time to the beginning or at the end of the interrogative present tense.

Affirmative Sentence for Past Tense	
Adverb of Time for Past Tense	+ Present Tense
Adverb of Time for Past Tense	+ តើ + Subject + Verb + ឬទេ?
Adverb of Time for Past Tense	+ តើ + Subject + Verb + Object + ឬទេ?

Or

Negative Sentence for Past Tense	
Present Tense	+ Adverb of Time for Past Tense
តើ + Subject + Verb + ឬទេ?	+ Adverb of Time for Past Tense
តើ + Subject + Verb + Object + ឬទេ?	+ Adverb of Time for Past Tense

Example:

Affirmative Sentence for Past Tense						
Adv for PT	+	តើ	+ Subject +	Verb	+ Object	+ ឬទេ?
ម្សិលមិញ		តើ	នាង	ទៅ	សារមន្ទីរ	ឬទេ?
Yesterday		did	she	go to	the museum?	
ខែមុន		តើ	លោក	ជួប	សាវ៉េត	ឬទេ?
Last month		did	you	meet	Saret?	
យប់មិញ		តើ	អ្នក	យំ		ឬទេ?
Last night		did	you	cry?		
ឆ្នាំមុន		តើ	គាត់	ទៅលេង	ស្រុកខ្មែរ	ឬទេ?
Last year		did	he	visit	Cambodia?	
មុននេះ		តើ	នាង	មក	សាលារបស់ខ្ញុំ	ឬទេ?
A little time ago		did	she	come to	my school?	
ថ្ងៃអាទិត្យមុន		តើ	ពួកគេ	ស្នាក់នៅ	សណ្ឋាគារនេះ	ឬទេ?
Last week		did	they	stay	in this hotel?	
ថ្ងៃមុន		តើ	លោក	ទិញ	កុំព្យូទ័រមួយ	ឬទេ?
Last day (one day in the past)			you	buy	a computer?	

## PRONUNCIATION

1. Word	<u>ភ្ញាក់</u>	<u>to wake up</u>	5. Word	<u>ការិយាល័យ</u>	<u>office</u>
2. Word	<u>រូបចម្លាក់</u>	<u>statues</u>	6. Word	<u>វេជ្ជបណ្ឌិត</u>	<u>doctor</u>
3. Word	~ <u>សារមន្ទីរ</u>	<u>museum</u>	7. Word	<u>ចន្លោះ</u>	<u>between</u>
4. Word	<u>បិទ</u>	<u>to close</u>	8. Word	<u>ថ្ងៃច័ន្ទ</u>	<u>Monday</u>

1. Word ភ្ញាក់ ( to wake up )

Word (ភ្នាក់) has two syllables. Consonant (ភ) could take sub-consonants (្គ) as initial cluster. The diacritic bantaq ( ́ ) occurs on the top of the final consonant of a syllable and it is used to shorten the vowel of that syllable.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
ភ្នាក់	ភ្នាក់	pñeək 

Note:


Consonant (ព្យ) has two sub-consonants (្គ) and (្ឃ).

Sub-consonant (្គ) is used as an initial cluster and (្ឃ) is used as a medial cluster.

[Top](#)

## 2. Word រូបចម្លាក់ (statue)

Word (រូបចម្លាក់) has three syllables. All Khmer consonant, there is an inherent vowel. The inherent vowel for the first series consonant is /aa/ and second series consonant is /oo/. The first series consonant (ច) has an inherent vowel /aa/. The inherent vowel for the first series consonant became shorter when it follows consonant (ម), therefore the pronunciation of this syllable is (cam). Consonant (ម) could takes sub-consonant (្គ) as a medial cluster. The diacritic bantaq ( ́ ) occurs on the top of the final consonant of a syllable and it is used to shorten the vowel of that syllable.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
រូបចម្លាក់	រូប ចម លាក់	ruup cam laq 

Note:

The inherent vowel for the first series consonant became shorter when it follows consonant (ម).

[Top](#)

## 3. Word សារមន្ទីរ (museum)

Word (សារមន្ទីរ) has four syllables. Consonant (រ) in the middle of the words is usually pronounced as (raq). Consonant (ម) could take sub-consonant (្គ) as a medial cluster. Consonant (រ) at the end of the word usually remains silent.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
------------------	---------------	-----

[Top](#)

## 4. Word បិទ ( to close )

Word ( បិទ ) has a syllable. There are two form of spellings. When the word end with second series consonant ( ទ ), it means (to close). If the word end with first series consonant ( តិ ), it means (to stick). The pronunciation of the two words are the same.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
បិទ	បិតិ	bət

[Top](#)

## 5. Word ការិយាល័យ ( office )

Word ( ការិយាល័យ ) has four syllables. Diacritic Sanyok Sanha ( ័ ) is used in a certain loaned words from Pali or Sanskrit. The syllable ( ល័យ ) ends in consonant ( យ ), therefore the diacritic has the same value as vowel ( ៃ - ).

Word Without Diacritic			Word With Diacritic		
ការិយាល័យ	kaa ri yaa ly	no meaning	ការិយាល័យ	kaa ri yaa lay	office

[Top](#)

## 6. Word វេជ្ជបណ្ឌិត ( doctor )


Word ( វេជ្ជបណ្ឌិត ) has four syllables. Consonant ( ជ ) in the middle of the words is usually pronounced as (cěək). Consonant ( ប ) could take sub-consonant ( ្រ ) as a medial cluster.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
វេជ្ជបណ្ឌិត	វេជ ជាក់ បន់ ទិត	veic cěək ban dət

[Top](#)

## 7. Word ចន្លោះ ( between )

Word ( ចន្លោះ ) has two syllables. Consonant ( រ ) take sub-consonants ( ្រ ) as medial cluster.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA	
ចន្លោះ	ចន់ ឡោះ	can lah	

[Top](#)

### 8. Word ថ្ងៃច័ន្ទ (Monday)





The word (ថ្ងៃច័ន្ទ) has two syllables. Consonant ( ថ ) could take sub-consonant ( ្ឿ ) as a initial cluster. The syllable ( ច័ន្ទ ), the diacritic ( ្ឿ ) has the same value as vowel ( - ្ឿ ). Sub-consonant ( ្ឿ ) found under consonant ( ធិ ) is not pronounced in syllable ( ច័ន្ទ ).

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA	
ថ្ងៃច័ន្ទ	ថ្ងៃ ចាន់	thɣaj can	

# Unit 10

Lesson 1: Asking Direction to National Museum  
 មេរៀនទី ១: សួររកផ្លូវទៅសារមន្ទីរជាតិ

Listen to the Whole Conversation 

- សុខៈ: សូមទោសបងប្រុស បងស្គាល់សារមន្ទីរជាតិទេ ? 
- វិណា: បាទខ្ញុំស្គាល់។ 
- សុខៈ: តើបងប្រុសអាចប្រាប់ខ្ញុំបានទេ សារមន្ទីរជាតិទៅតាមផ្លូវណា។ 
- វិណា: បាទខ្ញុំអាចប្រាប់បាន។ លោកស្គាល់មហាវិថីស៊ីហានុទេ ? 

សុខៈ បាទខ្ញុំស្គាល់។



វិណាៈ នៅពេលលោកទៅដល់មហាវិថីស៊ីហានុ លោកត្រូវជិះ  
ទៅខាងកើត រហូតដល់លោកឃើញផ្លូវ សុធារស។  
បន្ទាប់មកលោកបត់ធ្វេងនៅផ្លូវ សុធារស។ លោកជិះ  
ទៅត្រង់តាមផ្លូវសុធារសប្រហែល ១០០០ ម៉ែត្រ  
លោកនឹងឃើញរាជវាំងនៅខាងធ្វេងដៃ ហើយ



សុខៈ អរគុណច្រើន។











Khmer	Aid to Listening	English
សូមទោសបងប្រុស បងស្គាល់សារមន្ទីរជាតិទេ	soum toh baŋ proh baŋ skŏəl saraq- mŭəntH ciət tee  ləv nH baan tee.	Excuse me elder brother; can I go to the National Museum through this street?
បាទខ្ញុំស្គាល់។	baat kñom skŏəl.	Yes, you can.
តើបងប្រុសអាចប្រាប់ខ្ញុំបានទេ សារមន្ទីរជាតិទៅតាមផ្លូវណា។	tae baŋ proh qaac prap kñom baan tee saraq-mŭəntH ciət tHw tam phləv naa.	Can you tell me how [to get there]?
បាទខ្ញុំអាចប្រាប់បាន។ លោកស្គាល់មហាវិថីស៊ីហានុទេ ?	baat kñom qaac prap baan. look skŏəl mŏvhaa-withəy siihanuq tee?	Yes, I could. Sir, do you know Sihanouk Boulevard?
បាទខ្ញុំស្គាល់។	baat kñom skŏəl.	Yes I know.
នៅពេលលោកទៅដល់មហាវិថី ស៊ីហានុលោកត្រូវជិះទៅខាងកើត រហូតដល់លោកឃើញផ្លូវសុធា រស។បន្ទាប់មកលោកបត់ធ្វេង នៅផ្លូវ សុធារស។ លោកជិះ ទៅត្រង់តាមផ្លូវ សុធារស ប្រហែល ១០០០ ម៉ែត្រ លោកនឹងឃើញ រាជវាំងនៅ ខាងធ្វេងដៃហើយសារមន្ទីរជាតិ នៅជាប់នឹង រាជវាំង។	nHw peel look tHw daəl mŏvhaa- withəy siihanuq look trəw cih tHw kaaŋ kaət rŏvhout-dal look khəŏñ phləv sothiəŕŏəh. baəntŏəp-mŏv look bat cweij nHw phləv sothiəŕŭəh. look cih tHw traŋ nHw ləə phləv sothiəŕŭəh praəhael muəy- pŏəŋ maet look nHw khəŏñ riəcvəŋ nHw khaaŋ cweij -day huəy saraq- mŭəntH ciət nHw cŏəp nHw riəcvəŋ.	When you get to Sihanouk Boulevard, you need to go straight to the east until you see Sothearos Street. Then, you turn left at Sothearos Street. You go straight on Sothearos Street for about 1000 meters, then you will see the Royal Palace on the left hand side and the National Museum is located next to the Royal Palace.
អរគុណច្រើន។	qaa-kun craəŋ.	Thanks a lot.

Lesson 2: Giving Direction to Friend's House

មេរៀនទី ២: ប្រាប់ផ្លូវទៅផ្ទះភ្នំកម្រិត

Listen to the Whole Conversation 









- ដារា: **a** រុំធាស្គាល់ផ្លូវទៅផ្ទះរីណាទេ? 
- រុំធា: បាទខ្ញុំស្គាល់។ 
- ដារា: ផ្ទះគាត់ទៅតាមណា? 
- រីណា: ខ្ញុំមិនចេះប្រាប់ផ្លូវទេ ប៉ុន្តែខ្ញុំអាចជូនទៅបាន។ 
- ដារា: តោះអញ្ជឹងឡើងជិះមក។ 
- រីណា: ឥឡូវយើងទៅត្រង់រហូតដល់ភ្លើងស្តុបរួចបត់ឆ្វេង។ 
- រីណា: នៅផ្លូវខាងមុខបត់ស្តាំ។ នេះផ្ទះគាត់សូមអែបខាងស្តាំដែរ។ 
- ដារា: អរគុណច្រើន។ 

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English
រុំធាស្គាល់ផ្លូវទៅផ្ទះរីណាទេ?	vuthaa sköəl pləw tɔw ptəəh riinaa tee?	Vutha, do you know the road to Ryna's house?.
បាទខ្ញុំស្គាល់។	baat kñom sköəl.	Yes, I know.
ផ្ទះគាត់ទៅតាមណា?	ptəəh köət tɔw taam naa?	How do I go to his house?
ខ្ញុំមិនចេះប្រាប់ផ្លូវទេ ប៉ុន្តែខ្ញុំអាចជូនទៅបាន។	kñom mɔn ceh prap pləw tee, pontae kñom qaac cuun tɔw baan.	I don't know how to give direction, but I can lead you there.
តោះអញ្ជឹងឡើងជិះម៉ូតូខ្ញុំមក។	tah qañcəŋ laəŋ cih mɔək	Let's get on my bike.

<p>ឥឡូវយើងទៅត្រង់រហូតដល់ ភ្លើងស្តុប រួចបត់ឆ្វេង។ នៅផ្លូវខាងមុខបត់ស្តាំ។ នេះផ្ទះគាត់សូមអែបខាងស្តាំដៃ។</p>	<p>qəyləw yəəŋ tɨw trəŋ rəvəhəut dəl pləəŋ stop ruəc bət cweing. nɨw pləw khaaŋ muk bət sdam nɨh ptəəh kɔət soum qaep khaŋ sdam day.</p>	<p>Now we go straight until we get to the traffic light then turn left. Turn right at the next street. This is his house, please pull over on the right hand side.</p>
<p>អរគុណច្រើន។</p>	<p>qaa-kun craən.</p>	<p>Thank you very much.</p>

**Lesson 3: Where is the American Embassy**  
មេរៀនទី ៣: ស្ថានទូតអាមេរិកនៅឯណា

Listen to the Whole Conversation 

- ដារា: **a** រុំធាស្គាល់ស្ថានទូតអាមេរិកទេ? 
- រុំធា: ដារាមានការអី? 
- ដារា: ខ្ញុំចង់អោយយកសំបុត្រនៅលើតុនោះទៅស្ថានទូត។ 
- រុំធា: ខ្ញុំមិនស្គាល់ទេ តែបើប្រាប់ផ្លូវខ្ញុំអាចយកទៅបាន។ 
- ដារា: ឥឡូវស្ថានទូតអាមេរិកនៅជិតវត្តភ្នំ  
សួរគេនៅទីនោះទៅគេស្គាល់ហើយ។ 
- រុំធា: មានអីចំនាំនៅមុខនោះទេ? 
- ដារា: ស្រួលរកទេ នៅពីមុខស្ថានទូតគេមានដោតទង់ជ័យអាមេរិក។ 
- រុំធា: អញ្ចឹងខ្ញុំអាចរកឃើញហើយ។ 

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English
រុំធាស្គាល់ស្ថានទូតអាមេរិកទេ?	vuthaa skɔəl staan-tuut qaa-mee-ric tee?	Vutha, do you know American Embassy?
ដារាមានការអី?	daaraa miən kaa qəy?	What can I help you?









ខ្ញុំចង់អោយយកសំបុត្រនៅ លើតុនោះទៅស្ថានទូត។	kñom caŋ qaoy yɔak som bot nɔw ləw tok nuh tɔw stan-tuut.	I want you to take a letter on that table to the embassy.
ខ្ញុំមិនស្គាល់ទេ តែបើប្រាប់ផ្លូវ ខ្ញុំអាចយកទៅបាន។	kñom mɔn skɔl tee tae baɔ prap pləw kñom qaac yɔak tɔw baan.	I don't know the place, but if you give me direction I can take it there.
ឥឡូវស្ថានទូតអាមេរិកនៅជិត វត្តភ្នំសួរគេនៅទីនោះទៅគេ ស្គាល់ហើយ។	qəy ləw staan-tuut nɔw cət wɔt pnom suɔ kee nɔw tii nuh tɔw kee skɔl haɔy.	Now the embassy is near Wat Phnom. You can ask people over there they will tell you where the embassy is.
មានអ្វីចំនាំនៅខាងមុខ នោះទេ?	miaŋ qəy comnam nɔw khaaŋ muk tee?	Is there anything noticeable in front of the embassy?
ស្រួលរកទេនៅពីមុខស្ថានទូត អាមេរិកមានទង់ជ័យមួយ។	sruəl rɔak tee. nɔw pii muk staan- tuut qaa-mei ric miaŋ tuŋ cay muəy.	It is easy to find. In front of the embassy there is an American flag.
អញ្ចឹងខ្ញុំអាចរកឃើញ។	qañ-cəŋ kñom qaac rɔak khəñ.	So, I can find it.

Lesson 4: The Way to Svay Village

មេរៀនទី ៤: ផ្លូវទៅភូមិស្វាយ

Listen to the Whole Conversation 

- ដារា: វិណាស្គាល់ផ្លូវទៅភូមិស្វាយទេ ? 
- វិណា: បាទខ្ញុំស្គាល់។ 
- ដារា: តើភូមិស្វាយស្រួលរកទេ? 
- វិណា: ដារាមិនពិបាករកទេ។ ដារាស្គាល់ផ្លូវជាតិលេខ ២ទេ។ 
- ដារា: បាទខ្ញុំស្គាល់។ 
- ស្រួលហើយ។ ដារាទៅតាមផ្លូវនេះត្រង់រហូតដល់  
វិណា: ផ្សារសៀមរាប។ នៅផ្សារនេះមានផ្លូវធំមួយ។ 
- ដារាបតស្តាំនៅផ្លូវនេះហើយទៅត្រង់ ប្រហែល  
ប្រាំគីឡូម៉ែត្រដារានឹងទៅដល់ភូមិស្វាយហើយ។






Khmer	Aid to Listening	English
រីណាស្គាល់ផ្លូវទៅភូមិស្វាយ ទេ ?	rinaa skǎol pləw tɛw phuum swaay tee?	Rina, do you know the road to Phoum Svay?.
បាទខ្ញុំស្គាល់។	baat kñom skǎol.	Yes, I know.
តើភូមិស្វាយស្រួលរកទេ?	taə phuum swaay sruəl rɔək tee ?	Is Phoum Svay easy to find?
ដារាមិនពិបាករកទេ។ ដារាស្គាល់ផ្លូវជាតិលេខ ២ ទេ ?	daaraa mɛn pibaak rɔək tee. dara skǎol pləw ciət laik pii tee?	Dara it is not difficult. Dara do you know National Road Number 2 ?
បាទខ្ញុំស្គាល់។	baat kñom skǎol.	Yes, I know.
ស្រួលហើយ។ ដារាទៅតាមផ្លូវនេះត្រង់រហូតដល់ផ្សារសៀមរាប។ នៅផ្សារនេះមានដីធំមួយ។ ដារាបត់ស្តាំនៅផ្លូវនេះហើយទៅត្រង់ប្រហែលប្រាំគីឡូម៉ែត្រ ដារានឹងទៅដល់ភូមិស្វាយហើយ។	sruəl həy. dara tɛw traŋ pləw nih traŋ rɔhout dal psaa siəm-riəp. nɛw psaa nih miən dəy thom muəy. Daaraa bat-sdam nɛw pləw nih həy tɛw traŋ phruhael pram kilou maet daaraa nɛŋ tɛw dɔl phuum swaay həy.	That's easy. Dara go straight on this road until you get to Siem Riep market. At this market there is a big dirt road. Dara turn right into this road and go straight for about five kilometers Dara will reach Phoum Svay.
អរគុណច្រើន រីណា។	qaa-kun craən Rinaa.	Thanks a lot Rina.

Useful Words

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	Listening
ខាង	kaaŋ	side, to the direction of	
ខាងកើត	kaaŋ kaət	East	
ខាងក្រោម	kaaŋ kraom	Below	
ខាងជើង	kaaŋ cəəŋ	North	
ខាងលើ	kaaŋ ləə	Above	
ខាងស្តាំដៃ	khaŋ sdam day	on the right hand side	

ឃើញ	khəəŋ.	See	
ចង់	caŋ	Want	
ចេះ	ceh	Know	
ឆ្វេង	cweing	Left	
ឆ្វេងដៃ	cweing -day	on the left	
ជិះ	cih	Ride	
តុ	tok	table	
ត្រូវទៅ	trəw tɨw	Must go	
ទងជ័យ	tunŋ cay	Flag	
ទៅត្រង់	tɨw traŋ	Go straight	
នៅលើ	nɨw ləə	Above	
នៅជិត	nɨw cət	Near	
បត់	bat	Turn	
ប្រាប់	prap	Tell	
ផ្លូវ	phləv	road, street	
ផ្លូវជាតិ	pləw ciət	national road	
ភូមិ	phuum	village	
ភ្លើងស្តុប	pləəŋ stop	Traffic light	
មហាវិថី	məvhaa-withəy	Boulevard	
ម៉ែត្រ	maet	meter	
រកឃើញ	khəəŋ.	Find	
រាជវាំង	riəcvəəŋ	Royal Palace	
សារមន្ទីរជាតិ	pñeək laəŋ	National museum	
សួរ	sou	Ask	
សំបុត្រ	som bot	Letter	
ស្គាល់	skǎəl	Know	
ស្តាំ	sdam	Right	
ស្ថានទូត	stan-tuut	embassy	

ស្រួលរក	sruəl rōk	Easy to find	
អែបខាង	qaep khaŋ	Pull over	
ឥឡូវ	qəyləw	Now	

# Grammar

## A Model Verb (អាច) and Completive Verb (បាន)

### Affirmative Sentence with Model Verb (អាច)

#### A. and Completive Verb (បាន)

### Negative Sentence with Model Verb (អាច) and

#### B. Completive Verb (បាន)

### Interrogative Sentence with Model Verb

#### C. (អាច) and Completive Verb (បាន)

### Note

## A Model Verb (អាច) and Completive Verb (បាន)

A model verb (អាច) means "can, to be able to or to have the ability to". In general it occurs with a completive verb (អាច). In this unit, I would like to introduce some examples that the model verb (អាច) is used with a completive verb (បាន).

### A. Affirmative Sentence with Model Verb (អាច) and Completive Verb (បាន)

Subject	+	អាច	+	Verb	+	Objective	+	បាន
---------	---	-----	---	------	---	-----------	---	-----

Example:

### Affirmative Sentence with Model Verb (អាច)

Subject	+	អាច	+	Verb	+	Objective	+	បាន
ខ្ញុំ I	+	អាច	+	ជូន take	+	លោកទៅ you to there	+	បាន
គាត់ You	+	អាច	+	ស្តាប់ understand	+	ខ្ញុំ me	+	បាន
យើង He	+	អាច	+	យក take	+	វា ទៅ it to there	+	បាន
ពួកគេ We	+	អាច	+	ប្រាប់ speak	+	ខ្ញុំ me	+	បាន
នាង They	+	អាច	+	យល់ tell	+	ពួកគេ me	+	បាន
She	+	can	+	understand	+	them	+	បាន

[Top](#)

Note:

- ☛ In spoken language, the objective of the sentence can be drop. For example in the conversation lesson 1 to 4 in this unit, all the objective of the sentences that use the model verb (អាច) are dropped.
- ☛ The preposition of the verb is important, it cannot be dropped.

### B. Negative Sentence with a Model Verb (អាច) and Completive Verb (បាន)

Subject + មិន + អាច + Verb + Objective + បាន + ទេ

Example:

### Affirmative Sentence with Model Verb (អាច)

Subject	+	មិន	+	អាច	+	Verb	+	Objective	+	បាន	+	ទេ?
ខ្ញុំ		មិន		អាច		ជូន		លោកទៅ		បាន		ទេ?
I				cannot		take		you to there				
គាត់		មិន		អាច		ស្តាប់		ខ្ញុំ		បាន		ទេ?
You				cannot		understand		me				
គាត់		មិន		អាច		យក		វា ទៅ		បាន		ទេ?
He				cannot		take		it to there				
យើង		មិន		អាច		និយាយខ្មែរ		ជាមួយគាត់		បាន		ទេ?
We				cannot		speak		Khmer to him				
ពួកគេ		មិន		អាច		ប្រាប់		ខ្ញុំ		បាន		ទេ?
They				cannot		tell		me				
នាង		មិន		អាច		យល់		ពួកគេ		បាន		ទេ?
She				cannot		understand		them				

[Top](#)

Note:

- In spoken language, the objective of the sentence can be drop. For example in the conversation lesson 1 to 4 in this unit, all the objective of the sentences that use the model verb (អាច) are dropped.
- The preposition of the verb is important, it cannot be dropped.

C. Interrogative Sentence with Model Verb (អាច) and Completive Verb (បាន)

Subject + មិន + អាច + Verb + Objective + បាន + ទេ?

Example:

Affirmative Sentence with Model Verb (អាច)

តើ	+ Subject +	អាច	+	Verb	+	Objective	+	បាន	+	ឬទេ?
តើ	ខ្ញុំ	អាច		ជូន		លោកទៅ		បាន		ឬទេ?
Can	I			take		you to there				
តើ	គាត់	អាច		ស្តាប់		ខ្ញុំ		បាន		ឬទេ?
Can	you			understand		me				
តើ	គាត់	អាច		យក		វា ទៅ		បាន		ឬទេ?
Can	he			take		it to there				
តើ	យើង	អាច		និយាយខ្មែរ		ជាមួយគាត់		បាន		ឬទេ?
Can	we			speak		Khmer to him				
តើ	ពួកគេ	អាច		ប្រាប់		ខ្ញុំ		បាន		ឬទេ?
Can	they			tell		me				
តើ	នាង	អាច		យល់		ពួកគេ		បាន		ឬទេ?
Can	she			understand		them				

Note:

- In spoken language, the objective of the sentence can be drop. For example in the conversation lesson 1 to 4 in this unit, all the objective of the sentences that use the model verb (អាច) are dropped.
- The preposition of the verb is important, it cannot be dropped.

## PRONUNCIATION

- |                |               |                      |                |                |                  |
|----------------|---------------|----------------------|----------------|----------------|------------------|
| 1. <u>Word</u> | <u>វត្ត</u>   | <u>Buddha temple</u> | 4. <u>Word</u> | <u>សំបុត្រ</u> | <u>letter</u>    |
| 2. <u>Word</u> | <u>ទង់ជ័យ</u> | <u>flag</u>          | 5. <u>Word</u> | <u>ជិះ</u>     | <u>to ride</u>   |
| 3. <u>Word</u> | ~ <u>ភូមិ</u> | <u>village</u>       | 6. <u>Word</u> | <u>មហាវិថី</u> | <u>boulevard</u> |

- Word វត្ត ( Buddha temple )

Noun (វត្ត) is a mono syllable. Consonant (ត) could take sub-consonants (្រ) but it remains silent. This word derive from Sankrit and the pronunciation of this word is display as shown in the table below.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
វត្ត	វ៉ាត់	wǎt 

Note:

▶ (វត្ត), (វ៉ាត់) and (វ៉ែត) have the same pronunciation, but the different in spelling give different meaning.

- ▶ (វត្ត) means buddha temple
- ▶ (វ៉ាត់) means to hit or beat with a stick or to kick.
- ▶ (វ៉ែត) means to attack with hone of animals.

[Top](#)

## 2. Word ទង់ជ័យ (flag)

Word (ទង់ជ័យ) has two syllables. Diacritic Sanyok Sanha (្រ) is used in a certain loaned words from Pali or Sanskrit. The syllable (ជ័យ), the diacritic has the same value as vowel (- ៃ) when it follow by consonant (យ).

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
ទង់ជ័យ	ទង់ ជៃ	tuŋ cay 

[Top](#)

## 3. Word ភូមិ (village)

Word (ភូមិ) is a mono syllable. Vowel (ិ) is not pronounced.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
ភូមិ	ភូម	phuum 

[Top](#)

## 4. Word សំបុត្រ (letter)



Noun ( សំបុត្រ ) has two syllables. Consonant ( ត ) could take sub-consonants ( ្រ ) but it remains silent. This word derive from Sankrit and the pronunciation of this word is display as shown in the table below.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
សំបុត្រ	សំ បុត្រ	som bot 

[Top](#)

### 5. Word ជិះ ( to ride )

The mono syllable word ( ជិះ ) is a combination of consonant ( ជ ) and diphthong vowel ( ិះ ).

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
ជិះ	ជិះ	cih 

[Top](#)

### 6. Word មហាវិថី ( boulevard )

All Khmer consonant, there is an inherent vowel. The inherent vowel for the first series consonant is /**aa**/ and second series consonant is /**vv**/. The first series consonant ( ម ) has an inherent vowel /**aa**/, therefore the pronunciation of this syllable is ( **maa** ).

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
មហាវិថី	ម ហា វិ ថី	maa haa-withay 

Note:










► The two syllables ( មហា ) is known as prefix which means huge, a lot, superior.

# Unit 11

Lesson 1: A Bus Trip to Kompong Som

មេរៀនទី ១: ជិះរថយន្តក្រុងទៅក្រុងកំពង់សោម

Listen to the Whole Conversation 

- សុខ: **a** វិណាមានធ្លាប់ទៅលេងក្រុងកំពង់សោមទេ? 
- វិណា: ខ្ញុំធ្លាប់បានទៅពីរបីដងដែរ។ 
- សុខ: វិណាបើកឡានទៅខ្លួនឯង? 
- វិណា: ខ្ញុំជិះរថយន្តក្រុង។ មានរថយន្តក្រុងទៅមកពីរជើងមួយថ្ងៃ។ 
- សុខ: សុខា ជិះរថយន្តក្រុងប៉ុន្មានម៉ោងបានទៅដល់ក្រុងកំពង់សោម។ 
- វិណា: ប្រហែលជាបីម៉ោង។ 
- សុខ: មិនសូវយូរដែរ។ និយាយអញ្ចឹងរថយន្តក្រុងក្តៅទេ? 
- វិណា: មិនក្តៅទេព្រោះរថយន្តក្រុងមានម៉ាស៊ីនត្រជាក់។ 
- សុខ: អញ្ចឹងលើកក្រោយខ្ញុំជិះរថយន្តក្រុងទៅម្តង។ 

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English
វិណាមានធ្លាប់ទៅលេងក្រុងកំពង់សោមទេ?	rina tlɔəp tɔw leej kroy kampnɔŋ soam tee?	Rina, have you been to Kampong Soam?
ខ្ញុំធ្លាប់បានទៅពីរបីដងដែរ។	kɨom tlɔəp tɔw pii bəy daəŋ dae.	I have been there a few times.
វិណាបើកឡានទៅខ្លួនឯង ?	rina baək laan tɔw kluəŋ-qaəŋ ?	Did you drive there yourself?
ខ្ញុំជិះរថយន្តក្រុង។មាន រថយន្តក្រុងទៅមកពីរ ជើងមួយថ្ងៃ។	kɨom cih rɔət yɔn kroy. miəŋ rɔət yɔn kroy tɔw mɔək pii cəəŋ muəy thɨay.	I took the bus. There are two round trips twice a day.
ជិះរថយន្តក្រុងប៉ុន្មានម៉ោងបានទៅដល់ក្រុងកំពង់សោម ?	cih rɔət yɔn kroy ponmaan maəŋ ban tɔw dal kroy kampnɔŋ soam.	How long does it take to get to Kompong Soam?
ប្រហែលជាបីម៉ោង។	prəhael ciə bəy maəŋ.	Approximately, three hours.
មិនសូវយូរដែរ។ និយាយអញ្ចឹងរថយន្តក្រុងក្តៅទេ?	mɔn səw yuu dae. niyɔy qaŋcəŋ rɔət yɔn kroy kdaw tee.	It is not very long. By the way, is it hot in the bus?
មិនក្តៅទេព្រោះរថយន្តក្រុងមានម៉ាស៊ីនត្រជាក់។	mɔn kdaw tee prɔh rɔət yɔn kroy miəŋ maasiin-tracəəŋ.	It is not hot because the bus has air-condition.

អញ្ជឹងលើកក្រោយខ្ញុំ  
ជិះរថយន្តក្រុងទៅម្តង។









qañcəŋ ləək kraoy kñom cih lann  
buəɓ tɿw mədəəŋ.

So, next time I will take the bus.

Lesson 2: On a Motor Taxi

មេរៀនទី ២: ជិះម៉ូតូឌុប

Listen to the Whole Conversation 

- ម៉ារី: តូទៅសាកលវិទ្យាល័យភូមិន្ទភ្នំពេញយកប៉ុន្មាន ? 
- ម៉ូតូឌុប: បីពាន់រៀល។ 
- ម៉ារី: ថ្លៃណាស់ ពីរពាន់បានទេ ? 
- ម៉ូតូឌុប: ឡើងមកអញ្ជឹង។ 
- ម៉ារី: ខ្ញុំចង់ឈប់នៅបណ្ណាគារមួយភ្លែតបានទេ ? 
- ម៉ូតូឌុប: មិនអីទេ ខ្ញុំអាចឈប់បាន។ 
- ម៉ូតូឌុប: អ្នកទៅសាកលវិទ្យាល័យភូមិន្ទភ្នំពេញធ្វើអី ? 
- ម៉ារី: ខ្ញុំរៀនភាសាខ្មែរនៅទីនោះ។ 

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English
តូទៅសាកលវិទ្យាល័យ ភូមិន្ទភ្នំពេញយកប៉ុន្មាន ?	puu tɿw saakal-wɿtɿyɔlay phuumɿn pnum-piñ yɔək ponmaan.	Uncle, how much do you charge to go to the Royal University of Phnom Penh?
បីពាន់រៀល។	bəy pǔəɓ riəl.	Three thousand Riel.
ថ្លៃណាស់ពីរពាន់បានទេ?	thlay nah. Pii pǔəɓ riəl ban tee?	That is too expensive. Two thousand Riels is alright?
ឡើងមកអញ្ជឹង។	laəŋ məək qañcəŋ.	O.K. Get on now.
ខ្ញុំចង់ឈប់នៅបណ្ណាគារ មួយភ្លែតបានទេ ?	kñom caŋ chup nɿw bannakiə muəy-plɛət ban tee?	I would like to make a stop at the bookstore; is it alright?
មិនអីទេ ខ្ញុំអាចឈប់បាន។	mɿn qəy tee kñom qaac chup baan.	No problem. I can stop there.
អ្នកទៅសាកលវិទ្យាល័យ ភូមិន្ទភ្នំពេញធ្វើអី ?	nəək tɿw saakal-wɿtɿyɔlay phuumɿn pnum-pin twəə qay?	For what purpose are you going to the university?











ខ្ញុំរៀនភាសាខ្មែរនៅទីនោះ។

kñom riøn phiəsaə kmae ntəw tii nuh.

I study Khmer overthere.

Lesson 3: Boat Travel  
មេរៀនទី ៣: ធ្វើដំណើរតាមទូក

Listen to the Whole Conversation 











- សុខ: រីណាមានធ្មប់ជិះទូកលឿនទៅសៀមរាបទេ ? 
- រីណា: បាទខ្ញុំធ្មប់។ 
- សុខ: វាយ៉ាងម៉េចដែរ ? 
- រីណា: ខ្ញុំចូលចិត្តជិះទូកលឿនជាងយន្តហោះ។ 
- សុខ: រីណាជិះប៉ុន្មានម៉ោងបានទៅដល់សៀមរាប ? 
- រីណា: ខ្ញុំជិះប្រហែលជាប្រាំមួយម៉ោង។ 
- សុខ: កំពង់ផែទូកលឿននៅឯណា ? 
- រីណា: កំពង់ផែទូកលឿន នៅផ្លូវជាតិលេខ៥  
ជិតស្ពានជ្រោយចង្វារ។ 
- សុខ: សំបុត្រទូកលឿនថ្លៃទេ ? 
- រីណា: សំបុត្រទូកលឿនថោកជាងសំបុត្រយន្តហោះច្រើនណាស់។ 

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English
រីណាមានធ្មប់ជិះទូកលឿនទៅសៀមរាបទេ ?	rina miøn tɿəp cih tuuk ləøn tɿw siəm riəp tee?	Rina, have you ever taken a speed boat to Siem Riep?
បាទខ្ញុំធ្មប់។	Baat kñom tɿəp.	Yes, I have.
វាយ៉ាងម៉េចដែរ ?	viə yaaj məc dae?	How was it?
ខ្ញុំចូលចិត្តជិះទូកលឿនជាងយន្តហោះ។	kñom coul-cət cih tuuk ləøn ciəŋ yñøn-hah.	I liked speed-boat than I did air plane.
រីណាជិះប៉ុន្មានម៉ោងបានទៅដល់សៀមរាប ?	rina cih ponmaan maəŋ ban tɿw dal siəm riəp.	How many hours did it take to get to Siem Riep?

សៀមរាប ?		
ខ្ញុំជិះប្រហែលជាប្រាំមួយម៉ោង។	kñom cih prəhael ciə prammuəy maonj.	Approximately six hours.
កំពង់ផែទូកលឿននៅឯណា ?	kampñəŋ phae tuuk ləən nɔw qae-naa?	Where is the speed-boat port?
កំពង់ផែទូកលឿននៅផ្លូវ ជាតិលេខ ៥ ជិតស្ពានជ្រោយ ចង្វារ។	kampñəŋ phae tuuk ləən nɔw pləw ciət leik pram cɪt spjən crooc-caŋvaa.	It is on National Road Number Five near crooc-caŋvaa bridge.
សំបុត្រទូកលឿនថ្លៃទេ ?	sambot tuuk ləən thlay tee?	Is the speed-boat ticket expensive?
សំបុត្រទូកលឿនថោកជាង សំបុត្រយន្តហោះច្រើនណាស់។	sambot tuuk ləən thaok ciəŋ sambot yñəŋ-hah craən-nah.	It is a lot cheaper than plane ticket.

**Lesson 4: Visiting Thailand**  
មេរៀនទី ៤: ទៅលេងប្រទេសថៃ

Listen to the Whole Conversation 

- ចន ខ្ញុំនឹងទៅលេងប្រទេសថៃនៅខែក្រោយនេះ។ 
- តារា បើចនទៅដល់ថៃហើយ ចនគួរទៅលេងប្រទេសខ្មែរដែរ។ 
- ចន ខ្ញុំមិនដឹងថាតើវាពិបាកឬស្រួលទេ ក្នុងការធ្វើដំណើរពីប្រទេសថៃទៅប្រទេសខ្មែរ។ 
- តារា វាមិនពិបាកទេឥឡូវនេះ។ មានយន្តហោះ 
- ប្រទេសថៃទៅទីក្រុងសៀមរាប សឹងតែរាល់ថ្ងៃ។ 
- ចន បើអញ្ចឹងមែន ខ្ញុំគួរតែទៅលេងស្រុកខ្មែរដែរ។ 
- តារា ចនគួរទៅ ព្រោះស្រុកខ្មែរមានកន្លែងលេងច្រើនណាស់ ជាពិសេសអង្គរវត្ត។ 
- ចន តើពិសៀមរាបទៅភ្នំពេញ គេអាចជិះអី ? 
- តារា គេអាចជិះទូកលឿន យន្តហោះ ឬឡានក៏បាន។ 
- ចន អញ្ចឹងស្រួលហើយ។ 

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
ខ្ញុំនឹងទៅលេងប្រទេសថៃនៅខែក្រោយនេះ។	kñom nɔŋ tɛw leej prateeh thai nɛw khae kroay nih.	I will be going to Thailand next month.	
បើចនទៅដល់ថៃហើយ ចនគួរទៅលេងប្រទេសខ្មែរដែរ។	baə can tɛw dal thay haəy can qaəŋ kuə tɛw leej srok khmae dae.	If you get to Thailand, you should also go to visit Cambodia.	
ខ្ញុំមិនដឹងថាតើវាពិបាកឬស្រួលទេ ក្នុងការធ្វើដំណើរពីប្រទេសថៃទៅប្រទេសខ្មែរ។	kñom mɔn dəŋ thaa taə viə pibaaq rɛ srual kroŋ-kaa twəə-damnaə pii prateeh thay tɛw prateeh khmae.	I don't know whether it is difficult or easy to travel from Thailand to Cambodia.	
វាមិនពិបាកទេឥឡូវនេះ។ មានយន្តហោះ ហោះចេញពីទីក្រុងទេសចរណ៍ធំៗនៅប្រទេសថៃទៅទីក្រុងសៀមរាបសឹងតែរាល់ថ្ងៃ។	viə mɔn pibaaq tee qaɣləw nɛh. miəŋ yəən-hah hah cəŋ pi tii-kroŋ teehsəcaə thom-thom nɛw prateeh thay tɛw tii-kroŋ siəmriəp səŋ tae rəəl tɔŋ.	It is difficult at the moment. There are airplanes flying from major tourist cities in Thailand to Cambodia almost everyday.	
បើអញ្ចឹងមែន ខ្ញុំគួរតែទៅលេងស្រុកខ្មែរដែរ។	bae qaŋcəŋ mEEn kñom kuə tae tɛw leej srok khmae dae .	If that is the case, I should go to visit Cambodia as well.	
ចនគួរទៅព្រោះស្រុកខ្មែរមានកន្លែងលេងច្រើនណាស់ ជាពិសេសអង្គរវត្ត។	can kuə tɛw prŏh srok khmae miəŋ kanlaəŋ leej craəŋ nah ciə-pisaeh qaŋkəw-wəət.	John should go because there are a lot of places to visit in Cambodia especially Angkor Wat.	
តើពីសៀមរាបទៅភ្នំពេញ គេអាចជិះអី ?	tae coh pii siəm-riəp tɛw pnum-piŋ kee cih qey?	How do people travel from Siem Riep to Phnom Penh?	
គេអាចជិះទូកលឿន យន្តហោះ ឬឡានក៏បាន។	kee qaac cih tuuk-ləəŋ yəən-hah rɛ laan kuə baan.	They can take fast boat, fly, or drive.	
អញ្ចឹងស្រួលហើយ។	qaŋcəŋ srual haəy.	If so, it is very convinient.	











Lesson 5: Riding a Cyclo

មេរៀនទី ៥: ជិះស៊ីក្លូ

Listen to the Whole Conversation 




















ចាន់ធូ: តូស៊ីក្លូទៅផ្សាររុស្ស៊ីយកប៉ុន្មានរៀល ?



- ពួស៊ីកូ: បួនពាន់រៀល។ 
- ចាន់ធ្វ: បីពាន់រៀលបានទេ។ 
- ពួស៊ីកូ: បាន ឡើងជិះមក។ 
- ចាន់ធ្វ: ពូឈប់នៅជ្រុងខាងនេះចុះបានហើយ។ 
  
- ពួស៊ីកូ: លោកស្រីត្រូវការទេវិញទេ។ ប្រសិនបើលោកស្រី 
- ត្រូវការទេវិញ ខ្ញុំអាចនៅចាំលោកស្រីបាន។ 
- ប្រសិនបើពូចាំបាន ពូចាំចុះ។ ប្រហែលជាងមួយ 
- ចាន់ធ្វ: ម៉ោងទើបខ្ញុំទិញ អីវ៉ាន់ហើយ។ 
  
- ពួស៊ីកូ: មិនអីទេ។ អញ្ចឹងខ្ញុំនៅចាំលោកស្រីនៅកន្លែងលក់ផ្លែឈើ 
- ក្រោមដើមដូងនោះ។ 

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
ពួស៊ីកូទៅផ្សាររូស៊ីយកប៉ុន្មាន ?	puu siiklo tɔw psaa ruusii yɔk ponmaan?	How much does uncle cyclo charge for going the Russian market?	
បួនពាន់រៀល។	buən pǎən riəl.	four thousand riels.	
បីពាន់រៀលបានទេ ?	bəy pǎən riəl baan tee.	Is three thousand riels OK?	
បានឡើងជិះមក។	baan laəŋ cɛh mɔək.	OK please get on.	
ពូឈប់នៅជ្រុងខាងនេះចុះ បានហើយ។	puu chup nɔw cruj khaəŋ nɛh coh baan huəy.	Uncle stops at that corner; it is fine.	
លោកត្រូវការទេវិញទេ ? ប្រសិនបើលោកត្រូវការទេវិញ ខ្ញុំអាច នៅចាំលោកបាន។	look trəw-kaa tɔw wɛŋ kʰom qaac nɔw caam look baan.	Sir, do you need to go back? If you need to go back, I can with for you here, sir.	
ប្រសិនបើពូចាំបាន ពូចាំចុះ។ ប្រហែលជាងមួយម៉ោង ទើបខ្ញុំទិញ អីវ៉ាន់ហើយ។	prasən bae puu cam baan puu cam coh. prahael ciəŋ muəy moəŋ tɔəp kʰom tɛŋ qəywan huəy.	If unclce can wait, you can do so. Approximately over an hour until I finish shopping.	
មិនអីទេ។ អញ្ចឹងខ្ញុំនៅចាំ លោកនៅកន្លែងលក់ផ្លែឈើ ក្រោមដើមដូងនោះ។	mɛn qəy tee. qaŋcəŋ kʰom nɔw cam look nɔw kanlaəŋ lǔək plae-chəw kroam daəm douŋ nuh.	Not a problem. So, I will wait for you at the fruit stall under the coconut tree.	

## Useful Words

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	Listening
កំពង់ផែ	kampŭŋ phae	port	
ក្តៅ	kdaw	hot	
ក្រុង	kroŋ	city	
ខ្លួនឯង	kluəŋ-qaəŋ	yourself	
ចូលចិត្ត	coul-cət	to like	
ចាំ	caam	to wait	
ជិះ	cih	ride	
ជ្រុង	cruŋ	corner	
ឈប់	chup	stop	
ដើមដូង	daəm douŋ	coconut tree	
ថោក	thaok	cheap	
ថ្លៃណាស់	thlay nah	too expensive	
ទីក្រុងទេសចរណ៍	tii-kroŋ tehsəcɑɑ	tourist city	
ទូកលឿន	tuuk hən	speed-boat	
ធ្លាប់	tlɔ̀əp	used to	
បណ្ណាគារ	bannakiə	bookstore	
បើកឡាន	baək laan	drive	
ប្រហែល	prəhael	approximately	
ផ្លូវជាតិ	pləw ciət	National Road	
ផ្លែឈើ	plae-chəə	fruits	
ពិបាក	pibaaq	difficult	
ពីរបីដង	pii bəy daɑŋ	a few times	
ម៉ាស៊ីនត្រជាក់	maasiin-trəcəəq	air conditioner	



មិនអីទេ	mɪn qəy tee	No problem	
ម្តង	mədaŋ	one time	
យកប៉ុន្មាន	yɔɔk ponmaan	how much [you] charge	
យន្តហោះ	yʰən-həh	air plane	
រថយន្តក្រុង	rʰət yʰən kroŋ	bus	
រៀន	riən	study	
លើកក្រោយ	ləək kraoy	next time	
លេង	leeŋ	to visit	
សាកលវិទ្យាល័យ	saakal-wɪtɰyɔlay	University	
សំបុត្រ	sambot	ticket	
ស្រួល	sruəl	easy	
អីវ៉ាន់	qəywan	goods	

## GRAMMAR

- A. [Noun](#)
- B. [Noun Gender](#)
- C. [Noun and Noun Specifier](#)
- D. [Noun Specifier](#)
- E. [Note on Noun Secifier](#)

### A. Noun

There is not much different between a noun in Khmer and a noun in English. A noun is a word used to name a person, animal, place, thing and abstract idea.

[Top](#)

### B. Noun Gender

Many noun, like " គ្រូបង្រៀន " which means "teacher" can refer to men or women. Once, many Khmer nouns would change form depending on their gender. For example, A man was called " លោកគ្រូបង្រៀន " while a woman was called " អ្នកគ្រូបង្រៀន ". The use of gender specific noun is quite common in some words. Here are more examples:

Masculine Noun		Feminine Noun	
Khmer	English	Khmer	English
នាយក	Director	នាយិកា	Director
នាជការ	Actor	នាជការី	Actress
កម្មករ	Laborer	កម្មការី	Laborer
កុមារ	Child	កុមារី	Child

[Top](#)

### C. Noun and Noun Specifier

There are many kinds of noun in Khmer: proper nouns, common noun, abstract nouns collective nouns, countable nouns and uncountable nouns. Countable noun is a noun that we can count and usually it follow by a specifier. Since Khmer nouns do not have the plural form like most English nouns that change their form by adding "-s" or "-es", Khmer countable nouns has the following word order:

Noun + Number + Specifier

Example:

Noun	Number	Specifier	Note
គ្រូបង្រៀន	ពីរ	នាក់	Specifier " នាក់ " is used to count person such as friends, farmers, teachers, students and so on.
teacher	two	person	
គោ	បី	ក្បាល	Specifier " ក្បាល " is used to count animal such as cows, cat, dog by their head.
cow	three	head	
ខ្មៅដៃ	បួន	ដើម	Specifier " ដើម " is used to count long cylindrical object such as stick, tree, pencil, pen and so on.
pencil	four	stick	
ផ្លែក្រូច	ប្រាំ	ផ្លែ	Specifier " ផ្លែ " is used to count individual fruit such as mango,

			watermelon orange.
orange	five	fruit	
ឡាន	ពីរ	គ្រឿង	Specifier " គ្រឿង " is used to count object that involve with machinery such as car, motorbike, truck, airplane, and so on.
car	two	machine	
ផ្ទះ	បួន	ខ្នង	Specifier " ខ្នង " is used to count object that involves with building such as house.
house	four		Specifier " ខ្នង " is difficult to translate, it has no counterparts in English. " a house with four sections of roof"
ចេក	ប្រាំ	ផ្លែ	Specifier " ផ្លែ " is used to count individual fruit such as mango, watermelon orange.
banana	five	fruits	
ចេក	ពីរ	ស្ពិត	Specifier " ស្ពិត " is used to count a hand of banana which may consist of 5, 6, to ten bananas.
banana	two	hand	
ក្រូច	មួយ	ឡ	Specifier " ឡ " is used to count any object or things with in a number of twelve" dozen"
orang	one	dozen	
សាច់ជ្រូក	ពីរ	គីឡូ	Specifier " គីឡូ " is used to measure the weight of object or thing. One pound equal to 0.453 Kilograms
pork	two	kilogram	
លុយ	១០០	រៀល	Specifier " រៀល " is used to identify Cambodian currency.
money	100	riel	

[Top](#)

#### D. Noun Specifier

Specifier is a word which specify the size, shape, amount, or kind of unit being counted.

[Top](#)

#### E. Note on Noun Specifier

- ▶ Specifier is omitted in spoken language.
- ▶ Do not mix up the specifier which is used to count person with the animal because it is considered rude.

# PRONUNCIATION

1. <u>Word</u> <u>បណ្ណាគារ</u> <u>bookstore</u>	4. <u>Word</u> <u>យន្តហោះ</u> <u>letter</u>
2. <u>Word</u> <u>រថយន្តក្រុង</u> <u>bus</u>	5. <u>Word</u> <u>ស្ពាន</u> <u>bridge</u>
3. <u>Word</u> ~ <u>សាកលវិទ្យាល័យ</u> <u>university</u>	6. <u>Word</u> <u>ទេសចរណ៍</u> <u>tourism</u>

## 1. Word បណ្ណាគារ ( bookstore )


Word ( បណ្ណាគារ ) has three syllables. Consonant ( ណ ) could take sub-consonants ( ្គ ) as the medial cluster. The consonant ( ) at the end of the word remains silent.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
បណ្ណាគារ	បន់ ណា គា	bannakiə 

[Top](#)

## 2. Word រថយន្តក្រុង ( bus )

Word ( រថយន្ត ) has three syllables. Consonant ( ន ) could take sub-consonant ( ) and it remains silent. This word derived from Pali and Sanskrit, so the spelling remain as it is.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
រថយន្តក្រុង	រត់ យន់ ក្រុង	rət yən kɔŋ 

Note:

The word ( រថយន្ត ) is a compound of words. Word ( រថ ) means "vehicle" ( យន្ត ) means machine and ( ក្រុង ) is city.

[Top](#)

## 3. Word សាកលវិទ្យាល័យ ( university )


Word (សាកលវិទ្យាល័យ) has five syllables. Diacritic Sanyok Sanha (◌̣) is used in a certain loaned words from Pali or Sanskrit. Consonant (ឡ) could take sub-consonant (្រ) as a medial cluster. The syllable (ល័យ), diacritic (◌̣) has the same value as vowel (- ៃ) when it follow by consonant (យ).

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
សាកលវិទ្យាល័យ	សា កល វិទ្យា ល័យ	saa kal wit tyiə lay 

[Top](#)

#### 4. Word យន្តហោះ (letter)

Noun (យន្តហោះ) has two syllables. Consonant (ន) could take sub-consonants (្រ) but it remains silent. This word derive from Sankrit and the pronunciation of this word is display as shown in the table below.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
យន្តហោះ	យន្ត ហោះ	yən̄n-hah 

Note:

The word (យន្តហោះ) is a compound of word (យន្ត) which means machine and (ហោះ) which means "to fly".

[Top](#)

#### 5. Word ស្ពាន (bridge)

Word (ស្ពាន) is a mono syllable. Consonant (ស) could take sub-consonant (្រ) as initial cluster.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
ស្ពាន	ស្ពាន	spɔn 

[Top](#)

#### 6. Word ទេសចរណ៍ (tourism)

The word (ទេសចរណ៍) has three syllables. This word derived from Pali. The diacritic (◌̣) is used to make the consonant under it to become silent. Usually th this diartic is found under consonant (ណ) and (ន).

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
ទេសចរណ៍	ទេ សា ច	teeh so caa 

Note:










The word is a combination of syllable ( ទេស ) which means " country" and ( ចរណ៍ ) which means "to travel".

# Unit 12

Lesson 1: I Like Swimming

មេរៀនទី ១: ខ្ញុំចូលចិត្តហែលទឹក

Listen to the Whole Conversation 








- ដារា: នៅពេលទំនេរ វិណាចូលចិត្តធ្វើអី? 
- វិណា: ជួនកាលខ្ញុំលេងបាល់ ជួនកាលខ្ញុំអានសៀវភៅ។ 
- ដារា: វិណាចូលចិត្តហែលទឹកទេ?
- វិណា: ខ្ញុំចូលចិត្តហែលទឹកជាងគេ។ 
- ដារា: ចុះវិណាចូលចិត្តមើលកុនទេ ? 
- វិណា: ខ្ញុំមិនសូវចូលចិត្តមើលកុនប៉ុន្មានទេ។ ចុះដារា ? 
- ដារា: ខ្ញុំចូលចិត្តហែលទឹក លេងបាល់ និងអានសៀវភៅ។ 
- ដារា: ប៉ុន្តែ ខ្ញុំមិនសូវចូលចិត្តមើលកុនទេ។
- វិណា: ខ្ញុំក៏អញ្ជឹងដែរ។ 
- ដារា: អញ្ជឹង យើងគិតទៅហែលទឹកថ្ងៃអាទិត្យនេះ។ 
- វិណា: ទៅក៏ទៅ។ 


Khmer	Aid to Listening	English
នៅពេលទំនេរ ដារាចូលចិត្តធ្វើអី?	nɔw peel tum-nee dara coul cət twəə qəy?	What do you like to do in your free time?


ជួនកាលខ្ញុំលេងបាល់ ជួនខ្ញុំកាលអានសៀវភៅ។	cuən kaal kñom leej bal cuən kaal kñom qaan siəw phɛw	I sometimes play soccer and sometimes read book.
វិណាចូលចិត្តហែលទឹកទេ ?	rinaa coul cət hael tɨk tee?	Do you like swimming?
ខ្ញុំចូលចិត្តហែលទឹកជាងគេ។	kñom coul cət hael tɨk ciəŋ kee.	I like swimming the most.
ចុះវិណាចូលចិត្តមើលកុនទេ ?	coh rinaa coul cət məəl kon tee?	Do you like to go to the movie?
ខ្ញុំមិនសូវចូលចិត្តប៉ុន្មានទេ។ ចុះដារា ?	kñom mɨn səw coul cət ponmaan tee. coh daaraa.	I don't really like [going to the movie] very much. What about you?
ខ្ញុំ ចូលចិត្តហែលទឹក លេង បាល់ និងអានសៀវភៅ។ ប៉ុន្តែ ខ្ញុំមិនសូវចូលចិត្ត មើលកុនទេ។	kñom coul cət hael tɨk leej bal nɨŋ qaan siəw phɛw, pon-tae kñom mɨn səw coul cət məəl kon tee.	I like swimming, playing soccer and read book but I don't like going to the movie very much.
ខ្ញុំក៏អញ្ចឹងដែរ។	kñom kəw qaŋcəŋ dae.	Me too.
អញ្ចឹង យើងគិតទៅ ហែលទឹក ថ្ងៃអាទិត្យនេះ។	qaŋcəŋ yəəŋ kɨt tɛw hael tɨk tɨjaj qaa tət nih.	So, can we go to swim this Sunday.
ទៅក៏ទៅ។	tɛw kəw tɛw	That's O.K.


**Lesson 2: At the Beach**  
មេរៀនទី ២: នៅឆ្នេរសមុទ្រ

Listen to the Whole Conversation 

- ដារា: ម្សិលមិញវិណាសំរានលក់ស្រួលទេ? 
- វិណា: បាទលក់ស្រួលណាស់។ ចុះដារា? 
- ដារា: ខ្ញុំក៏អញ្ចឹងដែរ។ ខ្យល់សមុទ្រធ្វើអោយខ្ញុំគេងស្រួលណាស់។  
តោះ យើងទៅរកញុំាគុយទាវ។ 
- វិណា: ពេលញុំាហើយយើងទៅលេងឆ្នេរសមុទ្រទៀត។ 
- ដារា: គំនិតល្អ។ ប៉ុន្តែខ្ញុំត្រូវផ្លាស់ខោអាវហែលទឹកសិន។ 
- វិណា: មិនអីទេខ្ញុំចាំ។ 
- ដារា: ខ្ញុំមិនចូលចិត្តទឹកជ្រៅទេ ព្រោះខ្ញុំមិនសូវចេះហែលទឹក។ 

វិណា: អញ្ជឹង យើងហែលនៅកន្លែងទឹករាក់បានហើយ។ 

ដារា: ស្រេចតែវិណាចុះ។ ប៉ុន្តែពេលនេះខ្ញុំឃ្នានណាស់។ 












វិណា: ទៅក៏ទៅ។ 





Khmer	Aid to Listening	English
ម្សិលមិញសំរានលក់ស្រួលទេ?	msəl-məñ samraan lăk sroul tee?	Yesterday, did you sleep well?
បាទលក់ស្រួលណាស់។ ចុះដារា?	Baan lăk sroul nah. coh Dara?	Yes. (I) slept so well. and Dara (you)?
ខ្ញុំក៏អញ្ជឹងដែរ។ ខ្យល់សមុទ្រធ្វើអោយខ្ញុំគេងស្រួលណាស់។ តោះយើងទៅរកញ៉ុំគុយទាវសិន។	kñom kaa qañcəŋ dae. kyd samot twəə qəy kñom keeŋ sruəl nah. toh yəəŋ tɔw rəək ñam kuy-tiəw.	Me too. The air of the sea always make me sleep well. Let's go to have noodle soup.
ពេលញ៉ុំហើយយើងទៅលេងឆ្នេរសមុទ្រទៀត។	peel ñam haəy yəəŋ tɔw leeŋ cnei samot tiət.	After eating we will go to the beach again.
គំនិតល្អ។ ប៉ុន្តែខ្ញុំត្រូវផ្លាស់ខោអាវហែលទឹកសិន។	kumnət ləu. pontae kñom trəw plah khao-qaaw hael-tɨk sən.	Good idea. But I have to get changed to my swim suit.
មិនអីទេខ្ញុំចាំ។	mən qay tee kñom cam.	That's fine. I will wait.
ខ្ញុំមិនចូលចិត្តទឹកជ្រៅទេ ព្រោះខ្ញុំមិនសូវចេះហែលទឹក។	kñom mən coul cət hael tɨk crɔw tee prəəh kñom mən ceh hael tɨk.	I don't like deep water, because I am not good at swimming.
អញ្ជឹង យើងហែលនៅកន្លែងទឹករាក់បានហើយ។	qañcəŋ yəəŋ nɔw hael kanlaeŋ tɨk rəək baan haəy.	So, we can swim at the shallow area.
ស្រេចតែវិណាចុះ។ ប៉ុន្តែពេលនេះខ្ញុំឃ្នានណាស់។ តោះយើងទៅញ៉ុំគុយទាវសិន។	srac tae Rina coh. Puntae peel nih kñom kliəŋ nah. toh yəəŋ tɔw rəək ñam kuy-tiəw sən.	It is up to Ryna (you). But I am so hungry. Let's go to eat.
ទៅក៏ទៅ។	tɔw kəw tɔw	That's O.K.



Lesson 3: Tour Around City  
មេរៀនទី ៣: ដើរកំសាន្តក្នុងទីក្រុង



Listen to the Whole Conversation 









- ដារា: **a** លោកស្រីនឹងសំរាកនៅភ្នំពេញប៉ុន្មានថ្ងៃ? 
- កណិការ: ខ្ញុំនឹងសំរាកនៅភ្នំពេញបួនថ្ងៃ។ 
- ដារា: សំរាកបួនថ្ងៃដើរមិនសព្វកន្លែងទេ។ 
- កណិការ: អញ្ចឹងខ្ញុំត្រូវស្នាក់នៅប៉ុន្មានថ្ងៃ? 
- ដារា: យ៉ាងតិចណាស់លោកស្រីស្នាក់នៅអោយបានប្រាំមួយថ្ងៃដែរ។ 
- កណិការ: មានកន្លែងណាខ្លះដែលខ្ញុំត្រូវមើល? 
- ដារា: មានសារមន្ទីរជាតិ សារមន្ទីរទួលស្លែង វត្តភ្នំ និង រាជវាំង។ 
- កណិការ: ក្រៅពីនោះមានកន្លែងណាទៀត? 
- ដារា: មានប្រាសាទបុរាណនៅទន្លេបាទី។ 
- កណិការ: លោកស្រីជិះឡានប្រហែលជាកន្លះម៉ោងពីភ្នំពេញ។ 
- កណិការ: អញ្ចឹងខ្ញុំត្រូវស្នាក់នៅប្រាំមួយថ្ងៃ រួចហើយខ្ញុំចង់ទៅមើល 
- អង្គរវត្តទៀត។ ខ្ញុំឮថាអង្គរវត្តស្អាតណាស់។

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	
លោកស្រីនឹងសំរាកនៅភ្នំពេញប៉ុន្មានថ្ងៃ?	look-srəy nɛŋ sɑmraaq nɛw pnum-pɛn ponmaan thɛj?	How many days will Madame stay in Phnom Penh?	
ខ្ញុំនឹងសំរាកនៅភ្នំពេញ បួនថ្ងៃ។	kɔm nɛŋ sɑmraaq nɛw pnum-pɛn buən thɛj.	I will stay in Phnom Penh for four days.	
សំរាកបួនថ្ងៃដើរមិនគ្រប់ កន្លែងទេ។	sɑmraaq buən thɛj daə mɛn krup kɑnlaej tee.	Staying there to four days will not be enough.	
អញ្ចឹងខ្ញុំត្រូវស្នាក់នៅប៉ុន្មាន ថ្ងៃ?	qañcəŋ kɔm trəw snaq nɛw ponmaan thɛj?	So, how many days should I stay?	
យ៉ាងតិចណាស់លោកស្រីស្នាក់នៅអោយបានប្រាំមួយ ថ្ងៃដែរ។	yaŋ təc naah look-srəy snaq nɛw qaoy baan praam-muəy thɛj dae.	At least you should stay for six days.	
មានកន្លែងណាខ្លះដែលខ្ញុំ ត្រូវមើល?	miən kɑnlaej naa-klah dael kɔm trəw məəl?	What are the places that I should visit?.	
មានសារមន្ទីរជាតិ សារមន្ទីរទួលស្លែង វត្តភ្នំ និង រាជវាំង។	miən saaraqmɔntii ɕət saaraqmɔntii tɔ̌slaeŋ nɛŋ riəc wəŋ.	There are National museum, Toul Sleng Museum and the Royal Palace.	
ក្រៅពីនោះមានកន្លែង ណាទៀត?	kraw pii-nuh miən kɑnlaej naa tiət?	Are there any other places besides those places?	

<p>មានប្រាសាទបុរាណនៅ ទន្លេបាទី។ លោកស្រី ជិះឡានប្រហែល ជាកន្លះម៉ោងពីភ្នំពេញ។</p>	<p>miəŋ praasaat boraan nɔw təŋlee baatii. look-srəy cih laan praŋhael ciə kənləh-moaŋ pii pnum-pɛn.</p>	<p>There is ancient temple at Tonle Bati. It takes about half an hour by car from Phnom Penh.</p>	
<p>អញ្ចឹងខ្ញុំត្រូវស្នាក់នៅ ប្រាំមួយថ្ងៃ រួចហើយខ្ញុំចង់ ទៅមើលអង្គរវត្តទៀត។ ខ្ញុំ ឮថាអង្គរវត្តស្អាតណាស់។</p>	<p>qaŋcəŋ kñom trəw snaq nɔw pramuəy thɔy ruəc huəy kñom cəŋ tɛw məəl qaŋkəw-wəət tɛət. kñom lɛ thaa qaŋkəw-wəət sqaat nah.</p>	<p>Then, I should stay for six days because I want to go to visit Angkor Wat. I heard Angkor Wat is very beautiful.</p>	

**Lesson 4: I am a Tourist Guide**  
**មេរៀនទី ៤: ខ្ញុំជាអ្នកនាំភ្ញៀវទេសចរណ៍**

**Listen to the Whole Conversation** 

- ដារា: **a** ឥឡូវនេះ កណិការធ្វើការអី ? 
- កណិការ: ខ្ញុំជាអ្នកនាំភ្ញៀវទេសចរណ៍។ 
- ដារា: អញ្ចឹង កណិការធ្វើការនៅក្រសួងទេសចរណ៍មែនទេ ? 
- កណិការ: ចាស មិនមែនទេ។ ខ្ញុំធ្វើការនៅក្រុមហ៊ុនទេសចរណ៍។ 
- ដារា: ធម្មតា ភ្ញៀវទេសចរណ៍ចូលចិត្តទៅកន្លែងណាខ្លះ ? 
- កណិការ: ភ្ញៀវទេសចរណ៍ចូលចិត្តទៅមើលសារៈមន្ទីរជាតិ  
សារៈមន្ទីរទូលស្តែង រាជវាំង និង អង្គរវត្ត។ 
- ដារា: តើភ្ញៀវទេសចរណ៍ភាគច្រើន មកពីប្រទេសណាខ្លះ ? 
- កណិការ: ភ្ញៀវទេសចរណ៍មកពីគ្រប់ប្រទេសលើពិភពលោក  
ប៉ុន្តែភាគច្រើនមកពីប្រទេសជប៉ុន និង សហរដ្ឋអាមេរិច។ 












Khmer	Aid to Listening	English
ឥឡូវនេះកណិការធ្វើការអី ?	qəyləw-nih kənikaa twəə kaa qəy?	Kanika what are doing for a living now?
ខ្ញុំជាអ្នកនាំភ្ញៀវទេសចរណ៍។	kñom ciə nəək nəəm pñiəv tehsəcaə.	I am a tourist guide.

អញ្ជឹង កណិការធ្វើការនៅ ក្រសួងទេសចរណ៍មែនទេ ?	qañcəŋ kanikaa twəə kaa nɨw krasuəŋ tehsəcaɑ mɛɛn tee ?	So, are you working at the Ministry of Tourism?
ចាស មិនមែនទេ។ ខ្ញុំធ្វើការ នៅក្រុមហ៊ុន ទេសចរណ៍។	cah mɨn mɛɛn tee. kñom twəə kaa nɨw kromhun tehsəcaɑ.	No. I work for a tour company.
ធម្មតា ភ្ញៀវទេសចរណ៍ ចូលចិត្ត ទៅកន្លែងណាខ្លះ?	thəmmədaa pñiəv tehsəcaɑ coul- cət tɨw kanlaeŋ naa klah?	In general, where do tourists like to visit?
ភ្ញៀវទេសចរណ៍ចូលចិត្តទៅ មើលសារមន្ទីរជាតិ សារមន្ទីរ ទួលស្តែង រាជវាំង និង អង្គរវត្ត។	pñiəv tehsəcaɑ coul-cət tɨw məəl sarahmuəntii-ciət sarahmuəntii tuəl slaeŋ nɨŋ qaŋkəw- wəət.	Tourists like to visit National Museum, Toul Sleng Museum and Angor Wat.
តើភ្ញៀវទេសចរណ៍ភាគច្រើន មកពីប្រទេសណាខ្លះ?	tae pñiəv tehsəcaɑ phiək craən məwk pii prateeh naa klah?	Where do the majority of tourists come from?
ភ្ញៀវទេសចរណ៍មកពីគ្រប់ ប្រទេសលើពិភពលោក ប៉ុន្តែភាគច្រើនមកពី ប្រទេស ជប៉ុន និង សហរដ្ឋអាមេរិច។	pñiəv tehsəcaɑ məwk pii krup prateeh ləə piphup-look pontae phiək craən məwk pii prateeh cəwpon nɨŋ sahaq-rəət-qaamerɨc.	They come from all countries around the world but most of them are from the Japan and the United States.

## Useful Words

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	Listening
កុំន		movie	
កន្លែង	kanlaeŋ	place	
ក្រសួង	krasuəŋ	Ministry	
ក្រសួងទេសចរណ៍	krasuəŋ tehsəcaɑ	Ministry of Tourism	
ក្រុមហ៊ុនទេសចរណ៍	kromhun tehsəcaɑ	Tourist agency	
ក្រៅពីនោះ	kraw pii-nuh	besides	
ខោអាវហែលទឹក	khao-qaaw hael-tɨk	swim suit	

ខ្យល់	kyal	air	
គុយទាវ	kuy-tiəw	Noodle	
គំនិតល្អ	kumnɨt lqaa	Good idea	
គ្រប់កន្លែង	krup kanlaenj	all places	
ឃ្មាន	kliaŋ	Hungry	
ចូលចិត្ត	coul cət	like	
ចាំ	cam	wait	
ឆ្នេរសមុទ្រ	cnei samot	beach	
ជួនកាល	cuən kaal	sometimes	
ញ៉ាំ	ŋam	eat	
ដេក		sleep	
ដេកលក់ស្រួល	deik lǎək sruəl	sleep well	
ថ្ងៃអាទិត្យ	tɲaj qaa tət	Sunday	
ទឹកជ្រៅ	tɨk crɨw	deep water	
ទឹករាក់	tɨk rǎək	shallow area	
ទេសចរ ឬ អ្នកទេសចរ	teehsəcɑɑ nǎəq teehsəcɑɑ	tourist	
ទំនេរ	tum-nee	free	
ធម្មតា	thǎəmmədaa	normally	
ប្រាសាទបុរាណ	praasaat boraan	ancient temple	
ពិភពលោក	piphup-look	the world	
ភាគច្រើន	phiək craən	majority	
ភ្ញៀវ	pŋiəv	guests	
មិនអីទេ	mɨn qay tee	Never mine	
ម្សិលមិញ	msəl-mɨŋ	Yesterday	
យ៉ាងតិច	yaaj təc	At least	
រាជវាំង	riəc wǎəŋ	Royal Palace	
លេងបាល់	leenj bal	play soccer	

សមុទ្រ	samot	sea	
សារៈមន្ទីរ	saaraqmñənti	museum	
សៀវភៅ	siəwphɨw	book	
សំរាក	samraaq	Rest	
សំរាន	samraan	sleep	
ស្នាក់នៅ	snaq nɨw	stay	
ស្រេចតែ	srac tae	(It is) up to (you)	
ហែលទឹក	hael tɨk	swim	
អាន	qaan	read	
អ្នកនាំភ្ញៀវទេសចរណ៍	něək nǎəm pñiəv teehsəcaɑ	tourist guide	
ឥឡូវនេះ	qəyləw-nih	Now	

## Grammar

### Possessive Pronoun:

- A. Possessive Pronoun for First Person
- B. Possessive Pronoun for Second Person
- C. Possessive Pronoun for Third Person
- D. Note

### Possessive Pronoun

A possessive pronoun indicates that the pronoun is acting as a marker of possession and defines who owns a particular object or person. The formation of Khmer possessive pronoun is simple. It can be formed by adding word "របស់" in front of the pronoun that you have learned in previous lesson 5.

#### A. Possessive Pronoun for First Person

Singular						
Subject/Object Personal Pronoun			Possessive Personal Pronoun/Adjective			
Khmer	IPA	English	Khmer	IPA	English	Note
ខ្ញុំ	kñom	I	របស់ខ្ញុំ	robah kñom	mine, my	It is a polite pronoun, used to

						address to the elder and same age person.
ខ្ញុំបាទ	kñom baat	I	របស់ខ្ញុំបាទ	robah kñom baat	mine, my	It is a polite pronoun, used to address to the elder and same age person.
គ្នា	knio	I	របស់គ្នា	robah knio	mine, my	It is a polite word, used to address to the same age person.
អញ	qañ	I	របស់អញ	robah qañ	mine, my	It is an impolite word, used to address to unrespectable person. Sometime, it can be used with closed friend but it is very sensitive. I would suggest not to use this pronoun.

Example:

Khmer	English
មិត្ត របស់ ខ្ញុំ ចូលចិត្តធ្វើអ្វីផ្សេងៗគ្នា។	My friends like to do different things
ផ្ទះ របស់ ខ្ញុំបាទ នៅជិតសាលា ការិយាល័យ របស់ បាទខ្ញុំ	My house is close to my office.
សៀវភៅនោះ ជា របស់ ខ្ញុំ។	That book is mine

Plural						
Subject/Object Personal Pronoun			Possessive Personal Pronoun/Adjective			
Khmer	IPA	English	Khmer	IPA	English	Note
យើង	yəəŋ	We	របស់យើង	robah yəəŋ	ours / our	It is a polite possessive personal pronoun/adjective, used to address with the elder, younger and the same age people.
យើងខ្ញុំ	yəəŋ kñom	We	របស់យើងខ្ញុំ	robah yəəŋ kñom	ours / our	It is a polite possessive personal pronoun/adjective, used to address with the elder, younger and the same age people.
ពួកយើង	puəq yəəŋ	We	របស់ពួកយើង	robah puəq yəəŋ	ours / our	It is a polite possessive personal pronoun/adjective, used to address with the elder, younger and the same age people.
ពួកគ្នា	puəq knio	We	របស់ពួកគ្នា	robah puəq knio	ours / our	It is a polite possessive personal pronoun/adjective, used to address with the elder, younger and the same age people.

Example:

Khmer	English
សាលារៀន របស់ យើង នៅឆ្ងាយពីទីនេះ។	Our school is far from here.
និសិ្ស របស់ យើងខ្ញុំ មកពីច្រើនប្រទេស។	Our students come from many country.
សៀវភៅទាំងអស់ ជា របស់ យើង។	All of those books are ours



## B. Possessive Pronoun for Second Person

Singular						
Subject/Object Personal Pronoun			Possessive Personal Pronoun/Adjective			
Khmer	IPA	English	Khmer	IPA	English	Note
លោក	look	"You" or "Mr."	របស់លោក	robah look	yours / your	It is a polite masculine pronoun, used to address to the elder, younger or the inferior to the superior in formal situation.
លោកស្រី	look srəy	"You" or "Mrs."	របស់លោកស្រី	robah look srəy	yours / your	It is a polite feminine pronoun, used to address to the elder, younger or the inferior to the superior in formal situation.
អ្នក	nəəq	"You"	របស់អ្នក	robah nəəq	yours / your	Address to people who is approximately at the same age.
ឯង	qaeng	"You"	របស់ឯង	robah qaeng	yours / your	It is an impolite pronoun, used to address to the younger.


### Example:

Khmer	English
តើនេះ ជា ឡាន របស់ លោក ?	Is this your car?
ផ្ទះ របស់ លោកស្រី នៅឯណា ?	Where is your house?
សាលា របស់ អ្នក នៅឯណា ?	What is your school?

Plural						
Subject/Object Personal Pronoun			Possessive Personal Pronoun/Adjective			
Khmer	IPA	English	Khmer	IPA	English	Note
អស់លោក	look	you	របស់អស់លោក	robah qah look	yours / your	It is a polite masculine pronoun, used to address to the elder, younger or the inferior to the superior in formal situation.

អស់អ្នក	něəq	you	របស់អស់អ្នក	robah qah něəq	yours / your	It is a pronounce that is used to address to a rgroup of approximately the same age people.
---------	------	-----	-------------	-------------------	-----------------	---

Example:





Khmer		English	
ប្រទេស របស់ អស់លោក នៅឯណា ?		Where are your countries?	
ផ្ទះ របស់ អស់អ្នក នៅឯណា ?		Where are your houses?	



C. Possessive Pronoun for Third Person

Singular						
Subject/Object Personal Pronoun			Possessive Personal Pronoun/Adjective			
Khmer	IPA	English	Khmer	IPA	English	Note
វា	wiə	it	របស់វា	robah wiə	its	It is used to address from the superior to the inferior, adult to child, otherwise instulting, human to animal.
គាត់	kɔət	he/she	របស់គាត់	robah kɔət	his, hers /his, her	It is a polite uni sex pronounce that is used to address respectfully from younger to older, adult to adult.
គេ	kee	he/she/one/ someone	របស់គេ	robah kee	his, hers /his, her	It is used to address to people that we don't know.
នាង	niəŋ	she/he	របស់នាង	robah niəŋ	his, hers /his, her	It is a polite feminine pronounce that is used to address respectfully from the elder to the younger.

Example:

Khmer		English	
សៀវភៅ របស់ វា នៅលើតុ។		its book is on the table.	
ការសិក្សា របស់ គាត់ គឺ ល្អណាស់។		His study is very good.	
ការងារ របស់ គេ ងាយស្រួលណាស់។		His works is simple and easy.	
បងប្អូន របស់នាង រស់នៅ ស្រុកខ្មែរ។		Her relative live in Cambodia.	

Plural	
Subject/Object Personal Pronoun	Possessive Personal Pronoun/Adjective



Khmer	IPA	English	Khmer	IPA	English	Note
ពួកវា	wiə	they	របស់ពួកវា	rəbɑh puəq wiə	theirs /their	It is used to address from the superior to a group inferior, adult to a group of children, or human to a group of animal.
ពួកគាត់	kɔət	they	របស់ពួកគាត់	rəbɑh puəq kɔət	theirs /their	It is used to address to a group of the same age people or to a group of older people.
ពួកគេ	kee	they	របស់ពួកគេ	rəbɑh puəq kee	theirs /their	It is used to address to a group of unknown people.
ពួកនាង	niəŋ	they	របស់ពួកនាង	rəbɑh puəq niəŋ	theirs /their	It is used to address from the older people to a group of young feminines.

Example:

Khmer	English
របស់ក្មេងលេង របស់ ពួកវា មានច្រើនណាស់។	Their toys are too many.
ផ្ទះ របស់ ពួកគាត់ នៅឯណា ?	Where are their houses.
ម្ហូប របស់ ពួកគេ សំរាប់ថ្ងៃនេះគឺ សម្លម្ហូបសាច់មាន់។	Their food today is sour chicken soup.
ការងារ របស់ ពួកនាង នៅស្រុកខ្មែរ គឺជាលេខាធិការ។	Their jobs in Cambodia are secretaries.



Note:

- In spoken language and written language, sometime the words "របស់" indicate the possession is omitted. For example, the sentence "" in this lesson, "" is omitted.
- The noun immediately follow by the pronoun is usually recognized as the possessor of that pronoun.
- Cambodian has a much larger number of pronouns than English. Khmer pronouns reflect gender, relative, age and social status.

## PRONUNCIATION

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Word</u> <u>សមុទ្រ</u> <u>sea</u>         | 4. <u>Word</u> <u>ប្រាសាទ</u> <u>temple</u>       |
| 2. <u>Word</u> <u>ខ្យល់</u> <u>air</u>          | 5. <u>Word</u> <u>ភ្ញៀវទេសចរណ៍</u> <u>tourist</u> |
| 3. <u>Word</u> ~ <u>ផ្លាស់</u> <u>to change</u> | 6. <u>Word</u> <u>ធម្មតា</u> <u>in general</u>    |

1. Word សមុទ្រ ( sea )

Word ( សមុទ្រ ) has two syllables. Consonant ( ទ ) could take sub-consonants ( ្រ ) but it is not pronounced. This word derived from Pali or Sanskrit, and the pronunciation of this word illustrated below.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
សមុទ្រ	សាភ័ មុត	sa(q) mot 

[Top](#)

2. Word ខ្យល់ ( air )

Word ( ខ្យល់ ) is a mono syllable. Consonant ( ទ ) could take sub-consonant ( ្យ ) as an initial cluster. The diacritic bantaq ( ័ ) occurs on the top of the final consonant of a syllable and it is used to shorten the vowel of that syllable.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
ខ្យល់	ខ្យល់	kyal 

[Top](#)

3. Word ផ្លាស់ ( to change )


Word ( ផ្លាស់ ) is a mono syllable. Consonant ( ផ ) could take sub-consonant ( ្ល ) as an initial cluster. The diacritic bantaq ( ័ ) occurs on the top of the final consonant of a syllable and it is used to shorten the vowel of that syllable.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
ផ្លាស់	ផ្លាស់	plah 

[Top](#)

4. Word ប្រាសាទ ( temple )

Noun ( ប្រាសាទ ) has two syllables. Consonant ( ប ) could take sub-consonants ( ្រ ) as an initial cluster. The consonant ( ទ ) is used to replace consonant ( ត ) in the pronunciation.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
ប្រាសាទ	ប្រា សាត	praa saat 


Note:

● Consonant ( ប ) changes the form to ( ប្រ ) when vowel (-ា) is used.

[Top](#)

### 5. Word ភ្ញៀវទេសចរណ៍ ( tourist )

Word ( ភ្ញៀវទេសចរណ៍ ) has four syllables. This word is a combination of word ( ភ្ញៀវ ) which means "guest" and word ( ទេសចរណ៍ ) which means "tourism". Consonant ( ភ ) could take sub-consonant ( ្ឿ ) as initial cluster. The diacritic ( ្ឿ ) is used to make the consonant under it to become silent. Usually th this diacritic is found under consonant ( ណ ) and ( ន ).

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
ភ្ញៀវទេសចរណ៍	ភ្ញៀវ ទេ សា ច	pñiəv teeħ sə caa 

Note:

● Word ( ភ្ញៀវទេសចរណ៍ ) can be used interchangeable with word ( អ្នកទេសចរណ៍ ) or ( ទេសចរ )

[Top](#)

### 6. Word ធម្មតា ( in general )











The word ( ធម្មតា ) has three syllables. Consonant ( ម ) is used as vowel (-ំ) and sub-consonant ( ្ម ) is pronounced as consonant ( ម ). Consonant ( ត ) is changed to ( ដ ) in the pronunciation.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
ធម្មតា	ធម៌ មា ដា	thööm mə daa 

# Unit 13

## Lesson 1: Making Appointment with Doctor មេរៀនទី ១: ណាត់ជួបជាមួយលោកវេជ្ជបណ្ឌិត

Listen to the Whole Conversation 











- សារ៉េត: តើលោកវេជ្ជបណ្ឌិតពិនិត្យជំងឺនៅម៉ោងណាខ្លះ ? 
- សៀន: គាត់ពិនិត្យជំងឺពីម៉ោង ៤:០០ ដល់ម៉ោង ៧:០០ ល្ងាច។ 
- សារ៉េត: តើគាត់មានពិនិត្យជំងឺនៅពេលព្រឹកទេ ? 
- សៀន: បាទ គាត់មិនពិនិត្យទេ។ 
- សារ៉េត: អញ្ចឹងខ្ញុំអាចណាត់ជួបគាត់ម៉ោង ៥:០០ ល្ងាចបានទេ ? 
- សៀន: ម៉ោង ៥:០០ គាត់រវល់។ គាត់អាចជួបលោកនៅម៉ោង ៦:០០ 
- សារ៉េត: អញ្ចឹងក៏បាន ។ 
- សៀន: លោកឈ្មោះអី ហើយអាយុប៉ុន្មាន ? 
- សារ៉េត: បាទខ្ញុំឈ្មោះ សារ៉េត អាយុ ៣៥ ឆ្នាំ។ 
- សៀន: បាទ អរគុណ។ 

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English
តើលោកវេជ្ជបណ្ឌិតពិនិត្យជំងឺនៅម៉ោងណាខ្លះ?	tae look wic-cěəq-bən-dit pinət cum-ŋəh nɨw maŋ naa klah?	What time does the doctor work?
គាត់ពិនិត្យជំងឺម៉ោង ៤:០០ ដល់ម៉ោង ៧:០០ ល្ងាច។	kǒət pi-nət cum-ŋəh moaŋ buən dɔl moaŋ pram pii lɿjəc	He works from 4 to 7 o'clock in the evening.
តើគាត់មានពិនិត្យជំងឺ នៅពេលព្រឹកទេ ?	tae kǒət pinət cum-ŋəh nɨw peel prik tee?	Does he work in the morning?
បាទ គាត់មិនពិនិត្យទេ។	baat kǒət mɨn pinət tee.	No, he does not.
អញ្ចឹងខ្ញុំអាចណាត់ជួបគាត់ ម៉ោង	qaŋcəŋ kĭom qaac nat cuəp kǒət	So, can I make an appointment to

៥:០០ ល្ងាចបានទេ ?	moaŋ pram lŋiəc baan tee?	see him at 5 o'clock this evening?
ម៉ោង ៥:០០ គាត់រវល់។ គាត់អាចជួបលោកម៉ោង ៦:០០ ។	moaŋ pram kǎət rɔwəl. kǎət qaac cuəp look moaŋ pram muəy.	He is busy at 5:00. He can you see you at 6 o'clock.
អញ្ចឹងក៏បាន ។	qaŋcəŋ kɔv baan.	That is fine.
លោកឈ្មោះអី ហើយ អាយុប៉ុន្មាន ?	look chmuh qəy haəy qaa-yu ponmaan?	What are your name and age?
បាទខ្ញុំឈ្មោះ សាន់ត អាយុ៣៥ឆ្នាំ។	kŋom chmuh saaret qaa-yu samsəp pram cnam.	My name is Dara and I am 35 years old.
បាទ អរគុណ។	baat, qaa kun.	Yes, thank you.

**Lesson 2: Making Appoinment with Doctor**  
មេរៀនទី ២: ទៅជួបលោកវេជ្ជបណ្ឌិត







Listen to the Whole Conversation 

- វេជ្ជបណ្ឌិត: តើបងស្រីចេះតែយ៉ាងម៉េច ? 
- ចាន់ធួ: ខ្ញុំឈឺក្បាលហើយវិលមុខ។ 
- វេជ្ជបណ្ឌិត: តើបងស្រីមានគ្រុនទេ ? 
- ចាន់ធួ: ចាស ខ្ញុំមានគ្រុន។ 
- វេជ្ជបណ្ឌិត: តើបងស្រីគ្រុនប៉ុន្មានថ្ងៃហើយ ? 
- ចាន់ធួ: ខ្ញុំគ្រុនពីរថ្ងៃហើយ។ 
- វេជ្ជបណ្ឌិត: បងស្រីមានលេបថ្នាំអីខ្លះ ? 
- ចាន់ធួ: ចាស នៅទេ។ 
- វេជ្ជបណ្ឌិត: បើអញ្ចឹង បងស្រីយកថ្នាំនេះប្រើ ៣  
ថ្ងៃសិន។ នៅពេលបងស្រី អស់ថ្នាំ  
សូមមកម្តងទៀត។ 
- ចាន់ធួ: ចាស អរគុណ 

តើបងស្រីចេះតែយ៉ាងម៉េច ?	taə bəŋ srəy ceh tae yaaŋ meec?	How do you feel?
ខ្ញុំឈឺក្បាលហើយវិលមុខ។	kñom chɛ kbaal haəy vɛl muk	I have a headache and feel dizzy.
តើបងស្រីមានគ្រុនទេ ?	taə bəŋ srəy miəŋ krun tee?	Have you had a fever?
ចាស ខ្ញុំមានគ្រុន។	caah kñom miəŋ krun.	Yes, I have.
តើបងស្រីគ្រុនប៉ុន្មានថ្ងៃ ហើយ?	taə bəŋ srəy krun ponmaan tɕay haəy?	How many days have you had that fever?
ខ្ញុំគ្រុនពីរថ្ងៃហើយ។	kñom krun pii tɕay haəy.	For two days
បងស្រីមានលេបថ្នាំអីខ្លះ ?	bəŋ srəy miəŋ leep tnam qəy klah?	Have you taken any medicine yet?
ចាស ខ្ញុំមិនទាន់លេបទេ។	kñom mɛn-toəŋ leep tee.	No, not yet.
បើអញ្ចឹង បងស្រីយកថ្នាំនេះ ប្រើ៣ថ្ងៃ។ នៅពេល បងស្រីអស់ថ្នាំសូមមកម្តង ទៀត។	baə qaŋcəŋ bəŋ srəy yəək thnam nih praə bəy tɕay. nɛw peel qəh tnam som bəŋ srəy mɔək mdəŋ tiət.	Then [you should] take this medicine for three days. Come back again after you finish with the medicine.
ចាស អរគុណ	caah, qaa kun.	Yes, thank you.

**Lesson 3: Got a Cut**  
មេរៀនទី ៣: មុតជើង

Listen to the Whole Conversation 

- ចន: តើសារ៉េតកើតអីហ្នឹង? 
- សារ៉េត: ខ្ញុំមុតជើង។ 
- ចន: សារ៉េតធ្វើអ្វីបានជាមុតជើង? 
- សារ៉េត: ខ្ញុំដកស្មៅនៅក្នុងសួនច្បារក្រោយផ្ទះ។ 
- ចន: សារ៉េតមានឈាមច្រើនណាស់ អោយខ្ញុំហៅគ្រូពេទ្យមកទេ ? 
- សារ៉េត: មិនបាច់ទេ។ ខ្ញុំអាចរុំបួសដោយខ្លួនឯងបាន ។ 

ចនៈ សារ៉េតដាក់ថ្នាំហើយចាំរំលូស។



សារ៉េតៈ ខ្ញុំគ្មានថ្នាំទេ។



ចនៈ អញ្ជឹងខ្ញុំទៅទិញថ្នាំនៅឱសថស្ថានអោយ។



សារ៉េតៈ បាទ អរគុណច្រើនណាស់។



Khmer	Aid to Listening	English
តើសារ៉េតកើតអី ?	taə saaret kaət qəy ?	Saret, what happened?
ខ្ញុំមុតជើង។	kñom mut cəəŋ .	I have a cut on my feet.
សារ៉េតធ្វើអ្វីបានជាមុតជើង?	saaret thwəə qəy baan ciə mut cəəŋ?	Saret, what did you do to have that cut?
ខ្ញុំដកស្មៅនៅក្នុងសួនច្បារ ក្រោយផ្ទះ។	kñom daək smaw nɿw knoŋ suən cbaa kraoy pděəh.	I pulled grass in the garden behind the house.
សារ៉េតមានឈាមច្រើនណាស់ អោយខ្ញុំហៅគ្រូពេទ្យមកទេ?	saaret miəŋ chiəŋm craən nah qaoy kñom haw kruu-pɛət mɔək tee?	Saret, you have a lot of blood should I call the doctor?
មិនបាច់ទេ។ ខ្ញុំអាចរំលូស ដោយខ្លួនឯងបាន ។	mɿn-bac tee. kñom qaac rum rɔəbuəs daoy kluən qaəŋ .	It is not necessary. I can put a bandage on it myself.
សារ៉េតដាក់ថ្នាំហើយចាំរំលូស។	saaret daq thnam haəy cam rum rɔəbuəs.	Saret, applies the medicine first before you place a bandage on.
ខ្ញុំគ្មានថ្នាំទេ។	kñom kmieŋ thnam tee.	I do not have any medicine.
អញ្ជឹងខ្ញុំទៅទិញថ្នាំនៅ ឱសថស្ថានអោយ។	qañcəŋ kñom tɿw tɿñ nɿw qosotsthaan qaoy.	Then, I will go to the pharmacy and buy some medicine for you.
បាទ អរគុណច្រើនណាស់។	baat qaa kun craən nah.	Yes, thank you so much.

Lesson 4: Visiting a Dentist

មេរៀនទី ៤: ទៅពេទ្យធ្មេញ








Listen to the Whole Conversation



គ្រូពេទ្យ

តើបងស្រីចេះតែយ៉ាងម៉េច ?



ចាន់ធូរ:	ខ្ញុំឈឺធ្មេញ។	
វេជ្ជបណ្ឌិត:	តើបងស្រីឈឺប៉ុន្មានថ្ងៃហើយ ?	
ចាន់ធូរ:	ខ្ញុំឈឺបីថ្ងៃហើយ។	
វេជ្ជបណ្ឌិត:	បងស្រីមានដាក់ថ្នាំអីខ្លះទេ ?	
ចាន់ធូរ:	ចាស នៅទេ។	
វេជ្ជបណ្ឌិត:	អញ្ចឹងខ្ញុំដាក់ថ្នាំអោយ។ ពេលបាត់ឈឺ ខ្ញុំនឹងព្យាបាលធ្មេញជូន។	
ចាន់ធូរ:	ចាស អរគុណ	

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English
បងស្រីចេះតែយ៉ាងម៉េច ?	bɔŋ srəy ceh tae yaaŋ meec?	How do you feel?
ខ្ញុំឈឺធ្មេញ។	kñom chh tməñ.	I have tooth ache.
តើបងស្រីឈឺប៉ុន្មានថ្ងៃហើយ ?	taə bɔŋ srəy chh ponmaan tɔj haəy?	How long have you had the pain?
ខ្ញុំឈឺបីថ្ងៃហើយ។	kñom chh bay tɔj haəy.	Three days.
បងស្រីមានដាក់ថ្នាំអីខ្លះទេ ?	bɔŋ srəy miəŋ daq thnam qay klah tee?	Did you apply any medicine?
ចាស នៅទេ។	cah nɔw tee.	Not yet.
អញ្ចឹងខ្ញុំដាក់ថ្នាំអោយ។ ពេលបាត់ឈឺ ខ្ញុំនឹងព្យាបាលធ្មេញជូន។	qañcəŋ kñom daq tnam qaoy. Peel bat chh kñom nɔŋ pyiəbaal tməñ cuun.	So, I will put medicine on for you. When you don't feel the pain I will start the treatment.
ចាស អរគុណ	cah qɑkʊn.	Yes, thanks.

## Useful Words

Khmer	Aid to Listening	English	Listening
ក្រោយ	kraoy	behind	
គ្រុន	krun	fever	
ជំងឺ	cum-ŋh	disease	



ឈាម	chiəm	blood	
ឈឺ	chɨ	pain	
ឈឺក្បាល	chɨ kbaal	Headache	
ដក	daak	pull	
ដាក់ថ្នាំ	daq thnam	Apply the medicine	
ណាត់ជួប	nat cuəp	make an appointment	
ថ្នាំ	thnam	medicine	
ពិនិត្យ	pinɪt	examine	
ពេលព្រឹក	peel prɪk	morning	
ពេលល្ងាច	peel ɲɔc	evening	
ព្យាបាល	pyiə baal	treat	
មិនបាច់	mɪn-bac	not necessary	
មុត	mut	cut	
រវល់	rowəl	busy	
របួស	roobuəs	injury	
រុំរបួស	rum roobuəs	put a bandage	
លោកវេជ្ជបណ្ឌិត	look wic-cěəq-bən-dɪt	doctor	
លេប	leep	swallow	
លេបថ្នាំ	leep tnam	take medicine	
វិលមុខ	vɪl muk	dizzy	
សួនច្បារ	suən cbaa	garden	
ស្មៅ	smaw	grass	
ហៅគ្រូពេទ្យ	kruu-pɛɛt	call the doctor	
អាច	qaac	can	
អាយុ	qaa-yu	age	
ឱសថស្ថាន	qosotsthaan	pharmacy	

## GRAMMAR

- I. [Numerical Phrases Involving Time Specifiers](#)
- II. [Reverse Order of Khmer Time Specifiers](#)
- III. [Note](#)

### Numerical Phrases Involving Time Specifiers

- ▶ Time specifier occurs after numerals without a preceding noun head
- ▶ Time specifier in Khmer includes: year, month, week, days, hour, and minute.
- ▶ The structure of numeral phrases involving time specifier in Khmer is

Numerical + Time Specifier

Example:

Numerals

Specifiers

១	ឆ្នាំ
one	year
៣	ឆ្នាំ
three	years
១	ខែ
one	month
២	ខែ
two	months
៤	អាទិត្យ
four	weeks
៧	ថ្ងៃ
seven	days
៨	ម៉ោង
eight	hours
១០	នាទី
ten	minutes

[Top](#)

### The Reverse Order of Khmer Time Specifiers

- ▶ The reverse order of Khmer time specifiers result in different meaning. The following examples provide the meaning of the reverse order of Khmer time specifiers.
- ▶ Cardinal numbers have to change to ordinal numbers by adding particle "ទី" in front of each number.

Specifiers	Ordinal Numer
------------	---------------

ឆ្នាំ	ទី១	first year
ឆ្នាំ	ទី៣	third year
ខែ	ទី១	first month
ខែ	ទី២	second month
អាទិត្យ	ទី៤	fourth week
ថ្ងៃ	ទី៧	on the seventh day
ម៉ោង	៨	eight o'clock
នាទី	ទី១០	the tenth minutes

Note


► The reverse order of Khmer time specifiers "ម៉ោង" hour changes from 8 hours to 8 o'clock.

# PRONUNCIATION

1. Word	<u>ជំងឺ</u>	<u>sickness</u>	4. Word	<u>ឱសថស្ថាន</u>	<u>pharmacy</u>
2. Word	<u>ពិនិត្យ</u>	<u>to examine</u>	5. Word	<u>ព្យាបាល</u>	<u>to treat</u>
3. Word	<u>ថ្នាំ</u>	<u>medicine</u>	6. Word	<u>ម្តង</u>	<u>once</u>

### 1. Word ជំងឺ ( *sickness* )

Word ( ជំងឺ ) has two syllables. ( ជំមឺ ) is another form of spelling this word. Both forms are acceptable in everyday spelling. Conservative spellers like to spell this word in form ( ជំមឺ ). The pronunciation of these two form are the same.

Old Spelling	New Spelling	IPA
ជំងឺ	ជំមឺ	cum ɲɨ 

[Top](#)

### 2. Word ពិនិត្យ ( *to examine* )

Word ( ពិនិត្យ ) has two syllables. Consonant ( ន ) could take sub-consonant ( ្យ ) but it is not pronounced.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
ពិនិត្យ	ពិ និត	pi-nɨt 

[Top](#)

### 3. Word ថ្នាំ ( *medicine* )

Word ( ថ្នាំ ) is a mono syllable. Consonant ( ថ ) could take sub-consonant ( ្ន ) as an initial cluster.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
ថ្នាំ	ថ្នាំ	tnam 

Note:

Word ( ថ្នាំ ) is also used as a prefix: for example the word ( ថ្នាំជក់ ) means "cigarette" and word ( ថ្នាំលាប ) means paint.

[Top](#)

### 4. Word ឱសថស្ថាន ( *pharmacy* )

Noun ( ឱសថស្ថាន ) has three syllables. Consonant ( ស ) could take sub-consonants ( ្ថ ) as an initial cluster.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
------------------	---------------	-----

ឱសថស្ថាន

អោ សុត ស្ថាន

qo sot sthaan



Note:

Word (ឱសថស្ថាន) is a combination of word (ឱសថ) which means "medicine" and (ស្ថាន) which means "house".

[Top](#)

5. Word ព្យាបាល (to treat "an illness" )

Word (ព្យាបាល) has two syllables. Consonant ( ប ) could take sub-consonant ( ្យ ) as initial cluster.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
ព្យាបាល	ព្យាបាល	pyiəbaal

Note:

Consonant ( ប ) changes the form to ( ប្ា ) when vowel (-i) is used.

[Top](#)

6. Word ម្តង ( once )

The word (ម្តង) is a mono syllable. Consonant ( ម ) could take sub-consonant ( ្ត ) as an initial cluster.

Correct Spelling	Pronunciation	IPA
ម្តង	ម្តង	mdɔŋ

Note:

Word (ម្តង) is a short form of (ម្តួយ ដង) which means "one time"